



DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY  
HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS  
2 NAVY ANNEX  
WASHINGTON, DC 20380-1775

NAVMC DIR 3500.80  
C469  
25 Jul 05

NAVMC DIRECTIVE 3500.80

Subj: MARINE CORPS SECURITY FORCE BATTALION TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL,  
(SHORT TITLE: MCSF BN T&R MANUAL)

Ref: (a) MCO P3500.72A  
(b) MCO 1553.3A  
(c) MCRP 3-0A  
(d) MCO 1553.2A  
(e) MCRP 3-0B  
(f) MCO 3500.27A  
(g) MCO 1510.59B  
(h) MCO 3501.13

1. PURPOSE. Per reference (a), this manual establishes training standards, regulations and practices regarding the training of Marines and assigned Navy personnel performing duties as a member of Marine Corps Security Force Battalion.

2. CANCELLATION. MCO 1510.59B and MCO 3501.13

3. INFORMATION

a. The training events in this Directive will be used to standardize unit training throughout the community, focus on Mission Essential Tasks for the community, and establish a framework for assessment of unit and individual training readiness. It includes unit and individual training standards to be used by unit commanders and formal schools for the development of training plans, curricula, and records of training accomplished in order to establish a framework for identifying training achievements, training gaps, and objective assessments of readiness associated with the training of Marines.

b. CG TECOM will update this T&R Manual as necessary to provide current and relevant training standards to commanders. Commanders will incorporate these training events into their training plans to the extent that the events support their unit's Mission Essential Tasks and time and other resources are available.

c. All questions pertaining to the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program and Unit Training Management should be directed to: CG, TECOM (C 469), 3300 Russell Road, Quantico, VA 22134.

4. SCOPE

a. Commanders will review, update, and submit unit Mission Essential Task Lists (METL) per references (b) and (c).

b. Per reference (b), commanders shall conduct an internal assessment of the unit's ability to execute each MET and prepare a definitive plan of

**DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.**

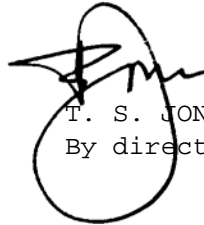
attack to achieve MET proficiency by developing long-, mid-, and short-range training plans to achieve proficiency in each MET.

c. Using this T&R Manual and other pertinent references, commanders will conduct evaluations (informal and formal) of their unit's ability to accomplish their METs. These training evaluations will be conducted at appropriate points in the unit's training cycle to determine MET proficiency and adjust training priorities.

d. Formal school directors and commanders will establish or review programs of instruction per reference (d) to ensure compliance with core individual training requirements as set forth in this Directive.

5. Command. This Directive is applicable to the Marine Corps Total Force.

6. Certification. This Directive is reviewed and approved this date.



T. S. JONES  
By direction

DISTRIBUTION: PCN 10303370000

Copy to: 7000106 (3)  
7000144/70000260/8145001(2)

LOCATOR SHEET

Subj: MARINE CORPS SECURITY FORCE BATTALION TRAINING AND  
READINESS MANUAL, (SHORT TITLE: MCSFBN T&R MANUAL)

Location: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Indicate location(s) of copy(ies) of this Manual.)

## RECORD OF CHANGES

Log completed change action as indicated

Change Number	Date of Change	Date Entered	Signature of Person Incorporating Change

MCSF BN T&R MANUAL

CONTENTS

CHAPTER

- 1.....USER'S OVERVIEW
- 2.....MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK MATRIX
- 3.....COLLECTIVE EVENTS
- 4.....INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

APPENDIX

- A.....FUNCTIONAL AREA CODE LIST
- B.....GLOSSARY

(This page intentionally left blank)

MCSF BN T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

USER'S OVERVIEW

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
INTRODUCTION.....	1000	1-1
CORNERSTONE ORDERS.....	1001	1-1
ORGANIZATION.....	1002	1-2
T&R EVENT CODING.....	1003	1-2
EVALUATION CODED (E-CODED) EVENTS.....	1004	1-3
MCSF CRP CALCULATION.....	1005	1-3
T&R EVENT COMPOSITION.....	1006	1-3
UNIT TRAINING.....	1007	1-7
REQUIREMENTS FOR COLLECTIVE TRAINING.....	1008	1-7
NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC) TRAINING.....	1009	1-8
NIGHT TRAINING.....	1010	1-8
APPLICATION OF SIMULATION.....	1011	1-8
UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT.....	1012	1-9
EVALUATION OF TRAINING.....	1013	1-9
OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM).....	1014	1-10
CAREER PROFESSIONAL READING .....	1015	1-10
CONCLUSION.....	1016	1-10

# MCSFBN T&R MANUAL

## CHAPTER 1

### OVERVIEW

#### 1000. INTRODUCTION

1. The Training and Readiness (T&R) Program is intended to become the Corps' primary tool for planning, conducting, and evaluating training, and for assessing training readiness. The operating forces and supporting establishments have developed Mission Essential Task Lists (METLs) for ground communities using Marine Corps doctrine, Table of Organization (T/O) missions, Operational Plans, Contingency Plans, and tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTP). T&R Manuals are built around these service-level METLs; all events contained in T&R Manuals relate directly back to this METL. The comprehensive T&R Program ensures the Marine Corps continues to improve its combat readiness by training more efficiently and effectively. Ultimately, this will enhance the Marine Corps' ability to accomplish all assigned missions.

2. The T&R Manual is a single document that seeks to capture the collective and individual training requirements to prepare units to accomplish their combat mission. The MCSF T&R Manual is not intended to be an encyclopedia that contains every minute detail of how to conduct training. Instead, it seeks to provide a framework, linked to a myriad of references, in order to provide a baseline to design, conduct, and assess training that prepares Marines to perform in combat. This manual is a fundamental tool for supervisors and commanders to build and maintain unit MCSF combat readiness. Using this tool, commanders can construct and execute an effective training plan that supports the unit's METL. More detailed information on the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program may be found in reference (a).

3. The MCSFBN T&R Manual is designed for 8152s, 8154s, and operational units assigned to MCSFBN (MCSFCo, FASTCo, and PRP). This manual focuses on individual and collective tasks performed or supervised by MCSF personnel in the performance of MCSFBN Mission Essential Tasks (METs).

#### 1001. CORNERSTONE ORDERS

1. Guidance for training and evaluation in the Marine Corps, from entry-level training at the formal schools to advanced PME for senior enlisted and officers, is found in the Cornerstone Orders. All training and evaluation programs throughout the Marine Corps were designed using the guidance provided in these orders. The Cornerstone Orders are:

- a. MCO 1553.1B, The Marine Corps Education and Training System
- b. MCO 1553.2A, Management for Marine Corps Formal Schools and Training Centers
- c. MCO 1553.3A, Unit Training Management
- d. MCO P1553.4A, Professional Military Education



## **1002. ORGANIZATION**

1. The MCSFBn T&R Manual is written to support the 81xx Occupational Field (OccFld) and subordinate units. The manual is not intended to be used as a stand-alone document. The MCSF Bn staff will use this manual in conjunction with the references for each individual and collective event to train MCSFBn personnel and units to accomplish Bn METs.
2. The MCSFBn T&R Manual is comprised of two chapters and eight appendices. Chapter 2 contains MOS core capabilities. Appendix A is an outline of functional codes used for individual and collective training events. Appendices B through I are MCSF Bn Mission Essential Tasks (METs) and their supporting individual and collective training standards. Appendix J is a glossary of terms and definitions commonly used in the Training and Readiness Program.
3. Collective and individual training standards (appendix B through I) in this T&R Manual will contain at a minimum, the following elements:
  - a. Event Code and Title
  - b. Evaluation Code
  - c. Sustainment Interval
  - d. Event Description
  - e. Event Condition
  - f. Event Standard
  - g. References
  - h. Rank

As this manual evolves over time, additional event components may be added. Further discussion of event components is found in paragraph 106 of this chapter.

## **1003. T&R EVENT CODING**

T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event consists of a three-field designator; each field has up to 4 characters. The first field represents the unit type or the MOS (e.g. 8152 or 8154). The second field represents the functional area of the event (e.g., CQB for Close Quarters Battle; FSC for Supporting Arms; etc.). The last field designates the level and sequence of the event. Figure (1) shows MCSFBn T&R levels and a sample MCSFBn T&R event. Event levels are categorized as 1000-level, 2000-level, and so on. 1000-level events are individual core skills taught at entry-level formal school. 2000-level events are core-plus skills taught during managed on the job training (MOJT) in the operating forces or at follow-on schools. 4000-level events are the lowest level collective core-plus skills for MCSFBn units. These events are performed by MCSFBn squads. 5000-level events are collective tasks performed at the platoon level. 6000-level events are collective tasks performed at the Company level. 7000-level

events are those events performed at the battalion level. Figure 1-1 provides a detail of MCSFBn T&R events and coding.

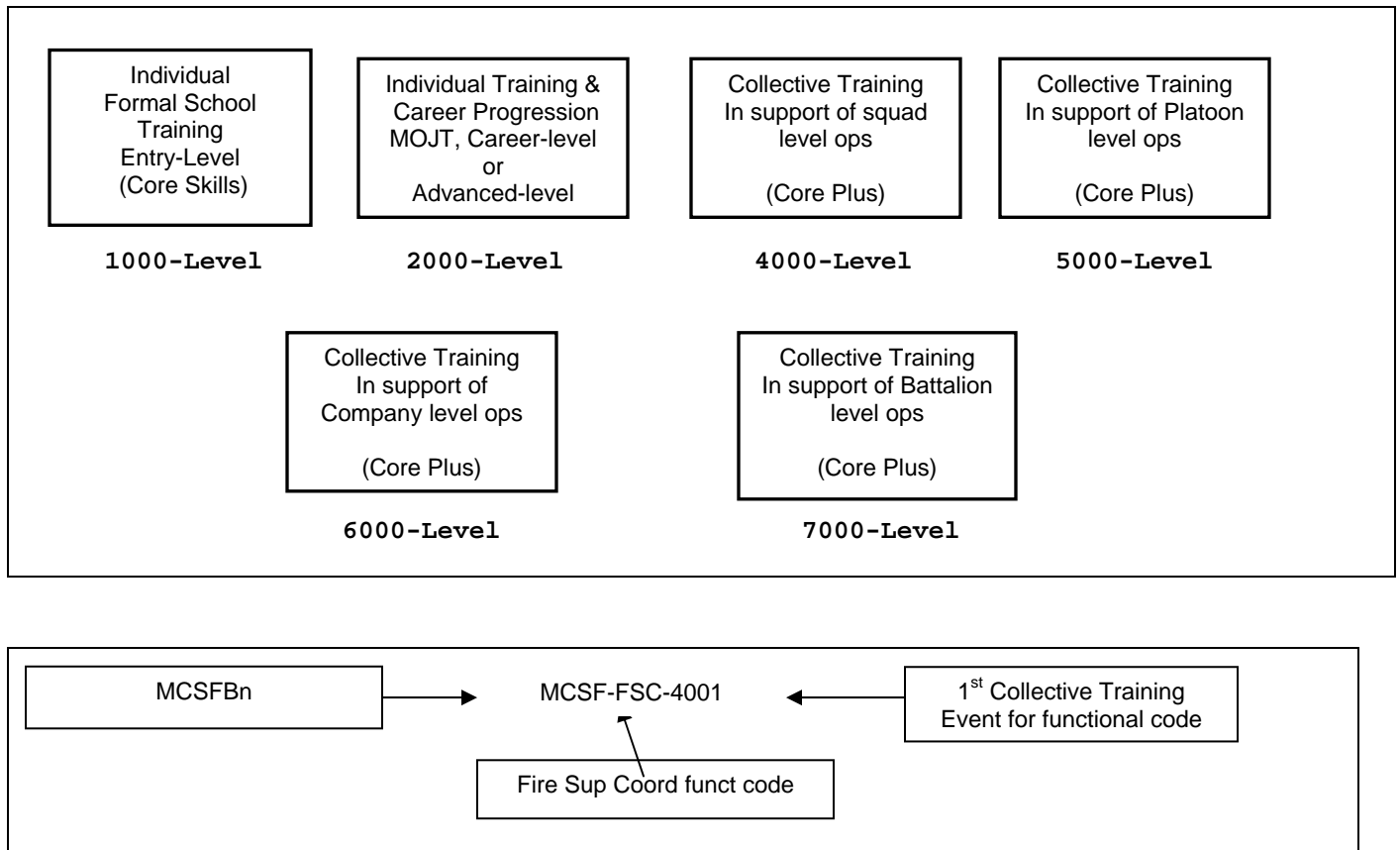


Figure 1-1: Event Levels and Coding

#### 1004. EVALUATION-CODED (E-coded) EVENTS

1. With limited time and material resources, it is imperative that commanders prioritize training to ensure their units are trained in those skills essential to accomplishing their mission. To assist with prioritization, certain events in the T&R manual are Evaluation-Coded (E-coded). Only significant events (collective or individual) that are critical components of a MET or are key indicators of a unit's readiness are E-coded. Only E-coded events are used to calculate Combat Readiness Percentage (CRP) for each MET.

2. Per reference (d), all commanders in the operating forces are required to develop a unit METL based on the Universal Joint Task List (UJTL), Universal Navy Task List (UNTL), Marine Corps Task List (MCTL), doctrine, T/O mission statement, higher headquarters' METLs, contingency plans and the assigned mission. The use of a METL-based training program allows the commander discretion in training and makes the T&R Manual a training tool rather than a prescriptive checklist.

3. The MCSFBn T&R Manual contains ITSS and CTSS that are unique to MCSFBn operations. Even though conduct of these operations will require individual and collective skills from other functional areas (infantry, logistics, NBCD, communications, etc.), in order to eliminate redundancy in the T&R Ground Program, those skills will not be included in the MCSFBn T&R Manual. Commanders and staff will refer to supporting T&R Manuals when developing training plans.

#### **1005. MCSFBN COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE (CRP) CALCULATION**

1. MCSFBn training shall be designed to accomplish the events that support the unit's METL, while simultaneously sustaining proficiency in individual core skills. The MCSFBn T&R Manual has events that directly support a MET. These events are E-coded and are the only events that contribute toward unit CRP. This is done to assist commanders in prioritizing the training toward their unit's METL, taking into account resource, time, and personnel constraints.

2. Unit CRP increases after the completion of E-coded events. The number of E-coded events for the MET determines the value of each E-coded event for that particular MET. All E-coded events have equal value for CRP calculation. For example, if there are 4 E-coded events for a MET, each is worth 25% of MET CRP. MET CRP is calculated by adding the percentage of each completed training event. The percentage for each MET is calculated the same way and all are added together and divided by the number of METS to determine CRP. For ease of calculation, we will say that each MET has 4 E-coded events; each contributes 25% towards the completion of the MET. If the unit has completed and is current on three of the four E-coded events for a given MET, then 75% of the MET is complete. The CRP for each MET is added together and divided by the number of METS to get the overall CRP. For example:

MET 1:	66.6% complete	(2 of 3 E-coded events trained)
MET 2:	100% complete	(2 of 2 E-coded events trained)
MET 3:	100% complete	(3 of 3 E-coded events trained)
MET 4:	50% complete	(1 of 2 E-coded events trained)
MET 5:	50% complete	(1 of 2 E-coded events trained)
MET 6:	100% complete	(2 of 2 E-coded events trained)

To derive MCSFBn CRP, simply add the CRP for each MET and divide by the number of METS:

MET CRP:  $66.6 + 100 + 100 + 50 + 50 + 100 = 466.6$

MCSFBn CRP:  $466.6 \text{ (total MET CRP)} / 6 \text{ (total number of METS)} = 77.8\%$

#### **1006. T&R EVENT DETAIL**

This section explains each of the elements of a T&R event. These are all the possible items that comprise an event. If a component is not applicable to a particular event, it is omitted. Future revisions of the MCSFBn T&R manual may incorporate additional event components as applicable.

a. Event Code. The event code is a three-field character set. Each field will have up to 4 characters.

- (1) The first field indicates MOS or Community (e.g., 8152/8154).
- (2) The second field indicates functional or duty area (e.g. AT, PS, FSC, etc.)
- (3) The third field indicates the level and sequence (1000 through up to 7000)

b. Title. The name of the event.

c. Evaluation Coded. This is a "yes/no" category indicating whether or not the event is E-coded. If yes, the event contributes toward CRP of the associated MET. The value of each E-coded event is based on number of E-coded events for that MET. Refer to Section 104 for a more detailed explanation of E-Coded events.

d. Supported MET(s). List all METs that are supported by the training event.

e. Sustainment Interval. This is the period, expressed in number of months, between evaluation and retraining requirements. Skills and capabilities acquired through the accomplishment of training events are to be refreshed at pre-determined intervals. It is essential that these intervals be adhered to in order to ensure the unit and Marines of the unit maintain proficiency.

f. Billet. Each individual training event will contain a billet code that designates who (by billet) is responsible for performing that event and any corresponding formal course required for that billet. Each commander has the flexibility to shift responsibilities based on the organization of his command. These codes are based on recommendations from the collective subject matter expertise that developed the manual and are listed for each event.

g. Grade. The rank at which MCSF Bn personnel are required to complete the event.

h. Description. Description of event purpose, goals, objectives, and requirements. It is a general description of an action requiring learned skills and knowledge, e.g., perform guard mount post and relief.

i. Condition. The conditions set for real world or combat situation in which the task is to be performed. They indicate what is provided (equipment, tools, materials, manuals, aids, etc.), environmental constraints or conditions under which the task is performed, and any specific cues or indicators to which the performer must respond. When resources or safety requirements limit the conditions, this should be stated.

j. Standard. The performance standard indicates the basis for judging the effectiveness of the performance. It consists of a carefully worded statement that identifies the proficiency level expected when the task is performed. The standard provides the minimum acceptable performance parameters and must be strictly adhered to. The standard for collective events will likely be general, describing the desired end-state or purpose of the event. The standard for individual events will more specifically

describe to what proficiency level, specified in terms of accuracy, speed, sequencing, quality of performance, adherence to procedural guidelines, etc., the event is to be accomplished.

k. Event Components. Description of the actions that the event is composed of, or a list of subordinate, included T&R event codes and event descriptions. The event components help the user determine what must be accomplished and to properly plan for the event.

l. Prerequisite Events. Prerequisites are academic training or other T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the task. They are lower-level events or tasks that give the individual/unit the skills required to accomplish the event. They can also be planning steps, administrative requirements, or specific parameters that build toward mission accomplishment.

m. Chained Events. Collective T&R events are supported by lower-level collective and individual T&R events. This enables unit leaders to identify subordinate T&R events that ultimately support specific mission essential tasks. When the accomplishment of any upper-level events, by their nature, result in the performance of certain subordinate and related events, the events are "chained." The completion of chained events will update sustainment interval credit (and CRP for E-coded events) for the related subordinate level events.

n. Related ITSS. A list of all the Individual Training Standards that support the event.

o. References. The training references shall be used to determine task performance steps, grading criteria, and ensure standardization of training procedures. They assist the trainee in satisfying the performance standards, or the trainer in evaluating the effectiveness of task completion. Since T&R Manuals provide only a training outline, references are key to developing lesson plans and adding specificity, such as performance steps, related doctrine, or other detailed information.

p. Distance Learning Products. Individual Multimedia Instruction (IMI), Computer-Based Training (CBT), Marine Corps Institute (MCI), etc. Included when the event can be taught via one of these media methods vice attending a formal course of instruction or receiving MOJT.

q. Support Requirements. This is a list of the external and internal support the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. This is a key section in the overall T&R effort, as resources will eventually be tied directly to the training towards METS. Future efforts to attain and allocate resources will be based on the requirements outlined in the T&R Manual. The list includes, but is not limited to:

(1) Range(s)/Training Area

(2) Equipment

(3) Materials

(4) Other Units/Personnel

r. Misc. Any additional information that will assist in the planning and execution of the event. The list may include, but is not limited to:

- (1) Admin Instructions
- (2) Special Personnel Certifications
- (3) Equipment Operating Hours

#### **1007. UNIT TRAINING**

1. The unit's training program emphasizes qualifications and the overall combat readiness of the unit. Individual T&R events are the building blocks for overall unit readiness; however, unit training should take priority over training of a select, few individuals. Integration of individual and collective training events into the unit-training plan is essential. Commanding officers will ensure that this training philosophy is implemented. Unit training must predominate, and units must tailor their training plans to ensure combat readiness. Commanders should rely upon the expertise of MCSF personnel when conducting MCSF training. Reliance upon MCSF personnel, adherence to the policies contained in reference (a to j), and use of this manual constitutes a solid foundation for unit training.

2. The training of Marines to perform as an integrated unit in combat lies at the heart of the T&R program. Unit readiness and individual readiness are directly related. Individual training and the mastery of individual core skills serve as the building blocks for unit combat readiness. A Marine's ability to perform critical skills required in combat is essential; however, it is not necessary to have all individuals within an organization fully trained in order for that organization to accomplish its assigned tasks. Manpower shortfalls, temporary assignments, leave, or other factors outside the commander's control, often affect the ability to conduct individual training. Regardless of current manning, the unit must maintain the ability to accomplish its assigned mission.

3. Commanders shall ensure that all tactical training is conducted to a T&R collective standard. The T&R manual is the unit training standard, and all training events shall support the unit METL and be tailored to meet T&R standards.

4. Commanders shall provide personnel the opportunities to attend formal and operational level courses of instruction as required by reference (e). Attendance at all formal courses must enhance the warfighting capabilities of the unit.

#### **1008. REQUIREMENTS FOR COLLECTIVE TRAINING**

Collective training shall serve to achieve standards of unit proficiency required to accomplish wartime missions. Subject to such constraints as safety requirements and limits on space for training, all collective training shall be conducted under conditions and rates of activity closely approximating those that the units being trained may encounter in combat. When constraints limit the use of realistic training conditions, then simulation and other products of training technology shall be used as applicable to enhance realism. Collective training, to the degree feasible,

shall include electronic warfare activity; nuclear, biological, and chemical defense activity; and the periodic use of opposing forces trained in the tactics of potential adversaries. All collective training exercises shall emphasize realistic performance of the functions of individual personnel in the exercising units. Support units shall be integrated into exercises for realistic training in their wartime supporting roles.

#### **1009. NBC TRAINING**

1. All Ground T&R manuals will contain the following statement regarding training and performing unit mission essential tasks in an NBC environment:

"All personnel assigned to the operating force must be trained in NBCD in order to survive and continue their mission in an NBC environment. Individual proficiency standards are defined as survival and basic operating standards. Survival standards are those that the individual must master in order to survive NBC attacks. Basic operating standards are those that the individual, and collectively the unit, must be capable of performing to continue operations in an NBC environment. In order to develop and maintain the ability to operate in an NBC environment, NBC training should be an integral part of the training plan and events in this T&R manual should be trained under NBC conditions whenever possible".

2. NBCD Officers and Specialists are instrumental in integrating realistic scenarios/situations that challenge units' ability to operate in an NBC environment.

3. Further guidance on NBCD training is found in MCO 3400.3 (NBCD Training).

#### **1010. NIGHT TRAINING**

While it is understood that all personnel and units of the operating force must be capable of performing their assigned mission in "every clime and place," current doctrine emphasizes the requirement to perform assigned missions at night and during periods of limited visibility. Basic skills are significantly more difficult when visibility is limited. To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission at night as well as during the day, they must train under the more difficult limited visibility conditions. As such, all events in this T&R manual should be conducted during the day and at night or under conditions of limited visibility. When there is limited training time available, night training should be conducted in lieu of day training.

#### **1011. APPLICATION OF SIMULATION**

Simulators and other training devices for weapon systems and equipment shall be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on the actual equipment. Particular emphasis shall be placed on simulators that provide training that might be limited by safety considerations or constraints on training space, time, or other resources. When deciding on simulation issues, the primary consideration shall be improving the quality of training and consequently the state of readiness. Potential savings in operating and support costs normally shall be an important secondary consideration.

## **1012. UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT**

1. Unit training management (UTM) is the application of the Marine Corps Training Principles and the Systems Approach to Training to satisfy the training requirements of commanders at all levels in order to accomplish their wartime mission. Guidance for UTM and the process for establishing effective UTM programs are contained in references (d), (g), and (h). These references are the basis for the development of this T&R Manual. Familiarity with MCRP 3-0A will enhance understanding of the Systems Approach to Training (SAT) process used in METL development and Marine Corps UTM principles.

2. UTM focuses training on the tasks that are essential to a unit's wartime capabilities. The SAT process provides commanders with the requisite tools and techniques to analyze, design, develop, implement, and evaluate the training of their unit. The Marine Corps training principles provide sound and proven direction and are flexible enough to accommodate the demands of local conditions. These principles are not inclusive, nor do they guarantee success. They are guides that commanders can use to manage unit-training programs. The Marine Corps training principles are:

- a. Train as you fight.
- b. Make commanders responsible for training.
- c. Use standards-based training.
- d. Use performance-oriented training.
- e. Use mission-oriented training.
- f. Train the MAGTF to fight as a combined arms team.
- g. Train to sustain proficiency.
- h. Train to challenge.

3. To maintain an efficient, effective training program, it is imperative that commanders at every level fully understand and implement UTM. Further guidance and other training resources can be found on the UTM website at <http://www.tecom.usmc.mil/utm/>.

## **1013. TRAINING EVALUATION**

1. The purpose of formal and informal evaluation is to provide commanders with a process to determine a unit's proficiency in the tasks it must successfully perform in combat. Informal evaluations should be conducted during every training evaluation. Formal evaluations are often scenario-based, focused on the unit's METs, based on collective training standards, and usually conducted during higher-level collective events.

2. Evaluation is a continuous process. Evaluation is integral to training management and is conducted by leaders at every level and during all phases of the planning and conduct of training. Training evaluations measure individual and collective ability to perform events specified in this T&R Manual. To ensure MCSF training is efficient and effective, it is imperative that evaluation be an integral part of the training plan. References (a),



(d), and (h) provide further guidance on the conduct of informal and formal evaluations.

#### **1014. OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)**

ORM is a process that enables commanders to plan for and minimize risk while still accomplishing the mission. It is a decision making tool used by Marines at all levels to increase operational effectiveness by anticipating hazards and reducing the potential for loss, thereby increasing the probability of a successful mission. ORM minimizes risks to acceptable levels, commensurate with mission accomplishment. Commanders, leaders, maintainers, planners, and schedulers shall integrate risk assessment in the decision-making process and implement hazard controls to reduce risk to acceptable levels. Applying the ORM process will reduce mishaps, lower costs, and provide for more efficient use of resources. ORM assists the commander in conserving lives and resources and avoiding unnecessary risk, making an informed decision to implement a course of action (COA), identifying feasible and effective control measures where specific measures do not exist, and providing reasonable alternatives for mission accomplishment. Most importantly, ORM assists the commander in determining the balance between training realism and unnecessary risks in training, the impact of training operations on the environment, and the adjustment of training plans to fit the level of proficiency and experience of Marines and leaders. Further guidance for ORM can be found in reference (f).

#### **1015. CAREER PROFESSIONAL READING**

Marines must continue to strive for excellence in all they do. The career professional reading lists contained in each chapter are finite examples developed by the SMEs who developed this manual of the vast array of materials available for professional and career development. These voluntary reading materials are included to augment core training and help to improve the proficiency of formal school and detachment staff.

#### **1016. CONCLUSION**

The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program continues to evolve. The vision for this program is that it will link the Uniform Joint Task List (UJTL), the Uniform Navy Task List (UNTL), and the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL) to METLs and unit training. In doing so, it will tie all training and training resources directly to unit missions. The Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS) is currently being developed and will eventually encompass Enhanced Status of Readiness and Training System (ESORTS). The purpose of this system is to measure and report on the readiness of military forces and the supporting infrastructure to meet missions and goals assigned by the Secretary of Defense. Training readiness in DRRS will be based primarily on METs. Because unit CRP is based on the unit's training towards its METs, it will provide a more accurate picture of a unit's ability to accomplish its mission. This will give fidelity to future funding requests and factor into the allocation of resources. Additionally, the Ground T&R Program will help to ensure training remains focused on mission accomplishment and that training readiness reporting is tied to commanders' METLs.

MCSF BN T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
SERVICE LEVEL MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX . . . . .	2000	2-1

(This page intentionally left blank)

**2000. MCSF BN MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK MATRIX.** The MCSF Bn Mission Essential Task List (METL) Table includes the designated MET number. The following event codes are the linked evaluation coded (E Coded) events that support the MET.

MET#/SERVICE LEVEL MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK

**MET 1. Train, equip, and assign Marine Security Forces in support of Navy bases/stations and the FAST Deployment Program (FDP)**

MCSF-PS-4001	Execute the interior guard
PRP-PS-4007	React to a security alert
PRP-PS-4008	Recapture strategic weapons within an exclusion structure
PRP-PS-4009	Conduct entry into an exclusion structure
MCSF-CONV-4010	Conduct motorcade operations
MCSF-PS-5001	Establish interior guard
MCSF-PS-5003	Establish site security
PRP-PS-5005	Recapture strategic weapons within a limited area
MCSF-CMDC-5006	Establish a command operations Center
MCSF-CMDC-5007	Conduct split-site security Operations
MCSF-CMDC-5008	Establish maritime/pierside Security
MCSF-CMDC-5009	Plan for reaction to a civil Disturbance
MCSF-CMDC-5013	Conduct platoon deployment in support of operations
MCSF-CMDC-5016	Conduct recapture of a vital asset
PRP-PS-6002	Conduct augmentation of posted security forces
MCSF-CMDC-6004	Maintain an alert force in support of operations
MCSF-CMDC-7001	Plan contingency and operations
MCSF-CMDC-7002	Plan coordination external agencies

---

**MET 2. Deploy FAST contingency alert platoon within 24 hours of notification**

MCSF-CONV-4010	Conduct motorcade operations
MCSF-PS-5001	Establish interior guard
MCSF-PS-5003	Establish site security
MCSF-CMDC-5006	Establish a command operations Center
MCSF-CMDC-5007	Conduct split-site security Operations
MCSF-CMDC-5008	Establish maritime/pierside Security
MCSF-CMDC-5009	Plan for reaction to a civil Disturbance
MCSF-CMDC-5013	Conduct platoon deployment in support of operations
MCSF-CMDC-5016	Conduct recapture of a vital asset
MCSF-CMDC-6004	Maintain an alert force in support of operations
MCSF-CMDC-7001	Plan contingency and operations
MCSF-CMDC-7002	Plan coordination external agencies

---

**MET 3. Train, equip, and assign cadre Marine personnel in support of Navy regions worldwide**

MCSF-PS-5001	Establish interior guard
--------------	--------------------------

---

**MET 4. Augment or reinforce the physical security of facilities or assets that have exceeded the organic capabilities of the supported commander**

MCSF-PS-4001	Execute the interior guard
MCSF-CONV-4010	Conduct motorcade operations

MCSF-PS-5001	Establish interior guard
MCSF-PS-5003	Establish site security
MCSF-CMDC-5006	Establish a command operations Center
MCSF-CMDC-5007	Conduct split-site security Operations
MCSF-CMDC-5008	Establish maritime/pierside Security
MCSF-CMDC-5009	Plan for reaction to a civil Disturbance
MCSF-CMDC-5013	Conduct platoon deployment in support of operations
MCSF-CMDC-5016	Conduct recapture of a vital Asset
MCSF-CMDC-6004	Maintain an alert force in support of operations
MCSF-CMDC-7001	Plan contingency and operations
MCSF-CMDC-7002	Plan coordination external agencies

---

**MET 5. Augment or reinforce physical security at designated American Embassies or consulates**

MCSF-CONV-4010	Conduct motorcade operations
MCSF-PS-4001	Execute the interior guard
MCSF-PS-5001	Establish interior guard
MCSF-PS-5003	Establish site security
MCSF-CMDC-5006	Establish a command operations Center
MCSF-CMDC-5007	Conduct split-site security Operations
MCSF-CMDC-5008	Establish maritime/pierside Security
MCSF-CMDC-5009	Plan for reaction to a civil Disturbance
MCSF-CMDC-5013	Conduct platoon deployment in support of operations
MCSF-CMDC-5016	Conduct recapture of a vital asset
MCSF-CMDC-6004	Maintain an alert force in support of operations
MCSF-CMDC-7001	Plan contingency and operations
MCSF-CMDC-7002	Plan coordination external agencies

---

**MET 6. Establish pierside/maritime security at designated sites**

MCSF-CONV-4010	Conduct motorcade operations
MCSF-PS-4001	Execute the interior guard
MCSF-PS-5001	Establish interior guard
MCSF-PS-5003	Establish site security
MCSF-CMDC-5006	Establish a command operations Center
MCSF-CMDC-5007	Conduct split-site security Operations
MCSF-CMDC-5008	Establish maritime/pierside Security
MCSF-CMDC-5009	Plan for reaction to a civil Disturbance
MCSF-CMDC-5013	Conduct platoon deployment in support of operations
MCSF-CMDC-5016	Conduct recapture of a vital asset
MCSF-CMDC-6004	Maintain an alert force in support of operations
MCSF-CMDC-7001	Plan contingency and operations
MCSF-CMDC-7002	Plan coordination external agencies

---

**MET 7. Provide site security for nuclear refuel/defuel operations**

MCSF-CONV-4010	Conduct motorcade operations
MCSF-PS-4001	Execute the interior guard
MCSF-PS-5001	Establish interior guard
MCSF-PS-5003	Establish site security
MCSF-CMDC-5006	Establish a command operations Center
MCSF-CMDC-5007	Conduct split-site security Operations

MCSF-CMDC-5008	Establish maritime/pierside Security
MCSF-CMDC-5009	Plan for reaction to a civil Disturbance
MCSF-CMDC-5013	Conduct platoon deployment in support of operations
MCSF-CMDC-5016	Conduct recapture of a vital asset
MCSF-CMDC-6004	Maintain an alert force in support of operations
MCSF-CMDC-7001	Plan contingency and operations
MCSF-CMDC-7002	Plan coordination external agencies

---

**MET 8. Establish physical security at designated APOE/APOD contingency site**

MCSF-CONV-4010	Conduct motorcade operations
MCSF-PS-4001	Execute the interior guard
MCSF-PS-5001	Establish interior guard
MCSF-PS-5003	Establish site security
MCSF-CMDC-5006	Establish a command operations Center
MCSF-CMDC-5007	Conduct split-site security Operations
MCSF-CMDC-5008	Establish maritime/pierside Security
MCSF-CMDC-5009	Plan for reaction to a civil Disturbance
MCSF-CMDC-5013	Conduct platoon deployment in support of operations
MCSF-CMDC-5016	Conduct recapture of a vital asset
MCSF-CMDC-6004	Maintain an alert force in support of operations
MCSF-CMDC-7001	Plan contingency and operations
MCSF-CMDC-7002	Plan coordination external agencies

---

**MET 9. Provide physical security for strategic weapons and strategic communications at designated Naval installations**

MCSF-PS-4001	Execute the interior guard
PRP-PS-4007	React to a security alert
PRP-PS-4008	Recapture strategic weapons within an exclusion structure
MCSF-CONV-4010	Conduct motorcade operations
MCSF-PS-5001	Establish interior guard
MCSF-PS-5003	Establish site security
PRP-PS-5005	Recapture strategic weapons within a limited area
MCSF-CMDC-5006	Establish a command operations Center
MCSF-CMDC-5007	Conduct split-site security Operations
MCSF-CMDC-6004	Maintain an alert force in support of operations
PRP-PS-6002	Conduct augmentation of posted security forces
MCSF-CMDC-7001	Plan contingency and operations
MCSF-CMDC-7002	Plan coordination external agencies

---

**MET 10. Train and equip designated Close Quarters Battle (CQB) Marines as members of Recapture Tactics Teams (RTT's)**

PRP-PS-4007	React to a security alert
PRP-PS-4008	Recapture strategic weapons within an exclusion structure
PRP-PS-4009	Conduct entry into an exclusion Structure
PRP-PS-5005	Recapture strategic weapons within a limited area
PRP-PS-6002	Conduct augmentation of posted security forces
MCSF-CMDC-7001	Plan contingency and operations
MCSF-CMDC-7002	Plan coordination external agencies

(This page intentionally left blank)

MCSF BN T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE TRAINING

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	3000	3-1
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES . . . . .	3010	3-1
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE TRAINING BY LEVEL . . . . .	3020	3-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE TRAINING BY TYPE COMMUNITY . . . . .	3030	3-4
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE TRAINING BY FUNCTIONAL AREA . . . . .	3040	3-6
4000 LEVEL TRAINING EVENTS . . . . .	3050	3-8
5000 LEVEL TRAINING EVENTS . . . . .	3060	3-22
6000 LEVEL TRAINING EVENTS . . . . .	3070	3-35
7000 LEVEL TRAINING EVENTS . . . . .	3080	3-39



MCSF BN T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE TRAINING

**3000. PURPOSE**

This chapter includes all collective training events for Marine Corps Security Force Battalion (MCSF Bn). A collective event is an event that a trained MCSF Bn team or unit (FAST, PRP, MSFCo) would accomplish in the execution of Mission Essential Tasks. These events are linked to a Service-Level Mission Essential Task (MET). This linkage tailors individual and collective training for the selected MET. Each event is composed of a collective event title, event description, condition, and standard. Accomplishment and proficiency level required is determined by the event standard.

**3010. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES**

T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event has a 4-4-4 character identifier.

- a. The first four characters represent the community:

- MCSF - Marine Corps Security Forces
  - FAST - Fleet Antiterrorism Support Team
  - PRP - Personal Reliability Program

- b. The second four characters represent the functional or duty area. This chapter contains the duty areas listed below. See Appendix A for functional area descriptions.

- PS - Physical Security
  - CMDC - Command and Control
  - CONV - Convoy

- c. The last four characters represent the level (4000, 5000) and sequence (4001-4999) of the event. The MCSF Bn collective training events are separated into four levels:

- 4000 - Squad level events
  - 5000 - Platoon level events
  - 6000 - Company level events
  - 7000 - Battalion level events

(This page intentionally left blank)

### 3020. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY LEVEL

EVENT	E-CODE	DESCRIPTION	PAGE
		<b>4000 - SQUAD LEVEL</b>	
MCSF-PS-4001	X	Execute the interior guard	3-8
MCSF-PS-4002		Establish security perimeter (security element)	3-8
MCSF-PS-4003		Organize the entry control point	3-9
MCSF-PS-4004		Establish reaction force positions	3-10
MCSF-PS-4005		Establish support element overwatch	3-11
MCSF-PS-4006		Reconstitute the reaction force	3-12
PRP-PS-4007	X	React to a security alert	3-12
PRP-PS-4008	X	Recapture strategic weapons within an exclusion structure	3-13
PRP-PS-4009	X	Conduct entry into an exclusion structure	3-14
MCSF-CONV-4010	X	Conduct motorcade operations	3-15
MCSF-CONV-4011		Conduct route reconnaissance	3-16
MCSF-CONV-4012		Conduct convoy rehearsals	3-16
MCSF-CONV-4013		Conduct convoy security force guard mount	3-17
MCSF-CONV-4014		Provide body bunker security for principle	3-18
MCSF-CONV-4015		Conduct a screen during a motorcade	3-19
MCSF-CONV-4016		Conduct a block during a motorcade	3-20
MCSF-CONV-4017		Perform a reverse out	3-20
		<b>5000 - PLATOON LEVEL</b>	
MCSF-PS-5001	X	Establish interior guard	3-22
MCSF-PS-5002		Establish/execute react force	3-22
MCSF-PS-5003	X	Establish site security	3-23
MCSF-PS-5004		Execute security sweep of the area	3-24
PRP-PS-5005	X	Recapture strategic weapons within a limited area	3-25
MCSF-CMDC-5006	X	Establish a command operations center	3-26
MCSF-CMDC-5007	X	Conduct split-site security operations	3-27
MCSF-CMDC-5008	X	Establish maritime/pierside security	3-28
MCSF-CMDC-5009	X	Plan for reaction to a civil disturbance	3-29
MCSF-CMDC-5010		Plan for detainee/prisoner of war (POW) handling	3-29
MCSF-CMDC-5011		Conduct a debriefing	3-30
MCSF-CMDC-5012		Employ procedures for the use of force	3-31
FAST-CMDC-5013	X	Conduct platoon deployment in support of operations	3-31
FAST-CMDC-5014		Employ Designated Marksman teams	3-32
FAST-CMDC-5015		Conduct vulnerability and site assessments at designated installations	3-33
FAST-CMDC-5016	X	Conduct recapture of a vital asset	3-33
MCSF-CONV-5017		Plan for convoy/motorcade	3-34
		<b>6000 - COMPANY LEVEL</b>	
MCSF-PS-6001		Conduct anti-terrorism/force protection intelligence brief	3-35
PRP-PS-6002	X	Conduct augmentation of posted security forces	3-35
MCSF-CMDC-6003		Coordinate with higher/adjacent/supporting units	3-36

MCSF-CMDC-6004	X	Maintain an alert force in support of operations	3-36
MCSF-CMDC-6005		Conduct company deployment in support of operations	3-37
		<b>7000 - BATTALION LEVEL</b>	
MCSF-CMDC-7001	X	Plan contingency and combat operations	3-39
MCSF-CMDC-7002	X	Plan coordination with external agencies	3-39
MCSF-CMDC-7003		Direct the intelligence effort	3-40
MCSF-CMDC-7004		Disseminate intelligence	3-40
MCSF-CMDC-7005		Plan logistics support	3-41
MCSF-CMDC-7006		Plan communications interoperability	3-42

### 3030. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY TYPE OF COMMUNITY

EVENT	E-CODE	DESCRIPTION	PAGE
		<b>FAST</b>	
FAST-CMDC-5013	X	Conduct platoon deployment in support of operations	3-31
FAST-CMDC-5014		Employ Designated Marksman teams	3-32
FAST-CMDC-5015		Conduct vulnerability and site assessments at designated installations	3-33
FAST-CMDC-5016	X	Conduct recapture of a vital asset	3-33
		<b>PRP</b>	
PRP-PS-4007	X	React to a security alert	3-12
PRP-PS-4008	X	Recapture strategic weapons within an exclusion structure	3-13
PRP-PS-4009	X	Conduct entry into an exclusion structure	3-14
PRP-PS-5005	X	Recapture strategic weapons within a limited area	3-25
PRP-PS-6002	X	Conduct augmentation of posted security forces	3-35
		<b>MCSF</b>	
MCSF-PS-4001	X	Execute the interior guard	3-8
MCSF-PS-4002		Establish security perimeter (security element)	3-8
MCSF-PS-4003		Organize the entry control point	3-9
MCSF-PS-4004		Establish reaction force positions	3-10
MCSF-PS-4005		Establish support element overwatch	3-11
MCSF-PS-4006		Reconstitute the reaction force	3-12
MCSF-CONV-4010	X	Conduct motorcade operations	3-15
MCSF-CONV-4011		Conduct route reconnaissance	3-16
MCSF-CONV-4012		Conduct convoy rehearsals	3-16
MCSF-CONV-4013		Conduct convoy security force guard mount	3-17
MCSF-CONV-4014		Provide body bunker security for principle	3-18
MCSF-CONV-4015		Conduct a screen during a motorcade	3-19
MCSF-CONV-4016		Conduct a block during a motorcade	3-20
MCSF-CONV-4017		Perform a reverse out	3-20
MCSF-PS-5001	X	Establish interior guard	3-22
MCSF-PS-5002		Establish/execute react force	3-22
MCSF-PS-5003	X	Establish site security	3-23
MCSF-PS-5004		Execute security sweep of the area	3-24
MCSF-CMDC-5006	X	Establish a command operations center	3-26
MCSF-CMDC-5007	X	Conduct split-site security operations	3-27
MCSF-CMDC-5008	X	Establish maritime/pierside security	3-28
MCSF-CMDC-5009	X	Plan for reaction to a civil disturbance	3-29
MCSF-CMDC-5010		Plan for detainee/prisoner of war (POW) handling	3-29
MCSF-CMDC-5011		Conduct a debriefing	3-30
MCSF-CMDC-5012		Employ procedures for the use of force	3-31
MCSF-CONV-5017		Plan for convoy/motorcade	3-34
MCSF-PS-6001		Conduct anti-terrorism/force protection intelligence brief	3-35
MCSF-CMDC-6003		Coordinate with higher/adjacent/supporting units	3-36

MCSF-CMDC-6004	X	Maintain an alert force in support of operations	3-36
MCSF-CMDC-6005		Conduct company deployment in support of operations	3-37
MCSF-CMDC-7001	X	Plan contingency and combat operations	3-39
MCSF-CMDC-7002	X	Plan coordination with external agencies	3-39
MCSF-CMDC-7003		Direct the intelligence effort	3-40
MCSF-CMDC-7004		Disseminate intelligence	3-40
MCSF-CMDC-7005		Plan logistics support	3-41
MCSF-CMDC-7006		Plan communications interoperability	3-41

### 3040. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

EVENT	E-CODE	DESCRIPTION	PAGE
		<b>PHYSICAL SECURITY</b>	
MCSF-PS-4001	X	Execute the interior guard	3-8
MCSF-PS-4002		Establish security perimeter (security element)	3-8
MCSF-PS-4003		Organize the entry control point	3-9
MCSF-PS-4004		Establish reaction force positions	3-10
MCSF-PS-4005		Establish support element overwatch	3-11
MCSF-PS-4006		Reconstitute the reaction force	3-12
PRP-PS-4007	X	React to a security alert	3-12
PRP-PS-4008	X	Recapture strategic weapons within an exclusion structure	3-13
PRP-PS-4009	X	Conduct entry into an exclusion structure	3-14
MCSF-PS-5001		Establish interior guard	3-22
MCSF-PS-5002		Establish/execute react force	3-22
MCSF-PS-5003		Establish site security	3-23
MCSF-PS-5004		Execute security sweep of the area	3-24
PRP-PS-5005	X	Recapture strategic weapons within a limited area	3-25
MCSF-PS-6001		Conduct anti-terrorism/force protection intelligence brief	3-35
PRP-PS-6002	X	Conduct augmentation of posted security forces	3-35
		<b>CONVOY</b>	
MCSF-CONV-4010	X	Conduct motorcade operations	3-15
MCSF-CONV-4011		Conduct route reconnaissance	3-16
MCSF-CONV-4012		Conduct convoy rehearsals	3-16
MCSF-CONV-4013		Conduct convoy security force guard mount	3-17
MCSF-CONV-4014		Provide body bunker security for principle	3-18
MCSF-CONV-4015		Conduct a screen during a motorcade	3-19
MCSF-CONV-4016		Conduct a block during a motorcade	3-20
MCSF-CONV-4017		Perform a reverse out	3-20
MCSF-CONV-5017		Plan for convoy/motorcade	3-34
		<b>COMMAND AND CONTROL</b>	
MCSF-CMDC-5006	X	Establish a command operations center	3-26
MCSF-CMDC-5007	X	Conduct split-site security operations	3-27
MCSF-CMDC-5008	X	Establish maritime/pierside security	3-28
MCSF-CMDC-5009	X	Plan for reaction to a civil disturbance	3-29
MCSF-CMDC-5010		Plan for detainee/prisoner of war (POW) handling	3-29
MCSF-CMDC-5011		Conduct a debriefing	3-30
MCSF-CMDC-5012		Employ procedures for the use of force	3-31
FAST-CMDC-5013	X	Conduct platoon deployment in support of operations	3-31
FAST-CMDC-5014		Employ Designated Marksman teams	3-32
FAST-CMDC-5015		Conduct vulnerability and site assessments at designated installations	3-33
FAST-CMDC-5016	X	Conduct recapture of a vital asset	3-33
MCSF-CMDC-6003		Coordinate with higher/adjacent/supporting units	3-36

MCSF-CMDC-6004	X	Maintain an alert force in support of operations	3-36
MCSF-CMDC-6005		Conduct company deployment in support of operations	3-37
MCSF-CMDC-7001	X	Plan contingency and combat operations	3-39
MCSF-CMDC-7002	X	Plan coordination with external agencies	3-39
MCSF-CMDC-7003		Direct the intelligence effort	3-40
MCSF-CMDC-7004		Disseminate intelligence	3-40
MCSF-CMDC-7005		Plan logistics support	3-41
MCSF-CMDC-7006		Plan communications interoperability	3-42



### 3050. 4000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE TRAINING EVENTS

---

**MCSF-PS-4001:** Execute the interior guard

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Interior guard is inherent to all site security missions. When walking post, touring posts, or standing a watch, guard personnel are required to ensure that all guard orders and special orders are strictly adhered to for the protection of personnel and property. Marines will know, understand, and enforce all general and special orders and be knowledgeable of their guard chain of command.

**CONDITION:** Given a Security Force unit, manned with appropriate personnel and equipment, under any condition, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Execute the interior guard ensuring all Marines understand the responsibilities of each post, general and special orders, and the guard chain of command in accordance with the references.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Posts are established
2. Employ Deadly Force when required
3. Conduct Guard Mount
4. Establish watch rotation

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 22-6 Guard Duty
2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Squad
3. NAVMC 2691 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

---

**MCSF-PS-4002:** Establish security perimeter (security element)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Upon arrival at a site with no known security personnel, one element within the security force will have to provide security while the other elements establish the interior guard, barrier plan, communications plan, Entry Control Points, Vehicle Control Points, Designated Marksman positions, and the COC.

**CONDITION:** Given a Security Force unit, manned with appropriate personnel and equipment, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Establish a secure perimeter ensuring 360-degree coverage, a minimum of two-man fighting positions; overlapping fields of fire as designated on a fire-plan sketch, properly positioned LP/OPs, and effective barriers in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Squad
3. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
4. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	10 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	100 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	40 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	100 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**MCSF-PS-4003:** Organize the entry control point

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Entry control points are established to control the flow of vehicles and personnel into and out of a secured area. Guard personnel must have knowledge of the different responsibilities executed at an Entry Control Point (ECP). Physical geometry and site security layout, ROE and local traffic laws of host nations may dictate the extent of a unit's ECP operations. Proper coordination must take place with all adjacent and supporting organizations to ensure the most effective ECP construction and implementation. Additional use of physical barriers, channeling devices, technical devices, Military Working Dogs (MWD), and host nation translators or interpreters is recommended assets while conducting these missions.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit assigned as a guard force, Manned with appropriate personnel and equipment, standing any given post on an ECP, under any condition, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Organize an ECP to properly conduct searches of restrained or unrestrained personnel and vehicles upon entry and exit of the secured area, in accordance with NAVMC 2691, U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
3. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:****ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	10 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	100 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	40 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	100 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area

---

**MCSF-PS-4004:** Establish reaction force positions

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Reaction force positions are placed in a designated area within the secure site. Reaction force positions are designed and ready to respond to a threat and instructed on primary direction of fire (PDF), from previously designated positions in the event that additional forces are needed to augment the standing guard posts or to address specific additional threats identified by watchstanders such as crowd control, increased vehicle traffic, search procedures and detainee handling.

**CONDITION:** As a member of a MCSF unit, given proper T/E equipment, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Establish reaction force positions in covered/concealed locations where the reaction force can best support the mission of the guard for in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
3. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:****ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	10 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	100 each

A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	40 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	100 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
 Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
 Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
 Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
 Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup

---

**MCSF-PS-4005:** Establish support element overwatch

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** When establishing site security, one element will establish external security, while the other element provides overwatch. The positions and level of overwatch will depend on the site, but the essential element is that all positions have another position that is mutually supporting.

**CONDITION:** Given a Security Force unit, manned with appropriate personnel and equipment, under any condition, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Establish an effective overwatch position, complete with mutually supporting positions, designed to enhance the ability of the security perimeter to accomplish its mission in accordance with the reference.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6 Ground Combat Operations
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
4. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	10 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	100 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	40 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	100 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
 Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
 Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
 Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

---

**MCSF-PS-4006:** Reconstitute the reaction force

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** In a situation where the initial Reaction Force has been deployed, the guard force must have a plan for immediately replacing that force.

**CONDITION:** Given a Security Force unit, manned with appropriate personnel and equipment, a situation that requires the reaction force to respond, under any condition, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Reconstitute a reaction force from available Marines ensuring no degradation of security at the perimeter or designated guard posts in accordance with the reference.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 22-6 Guard Duty
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	10 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	100 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	40 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	100 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**PRP-PS-4007:** React to a security alert

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** A security alert is announced when an a possible threat is perceived in or around a limited area. Security Forces must react and respond to the potential threat within established time limits with specific forces listed in the references.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF PRP unit, manned with appropriate personnel and equipment, upon announcement of a Security Alert at a specific location, under any condition, and with the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** React to the threat at the location of the security alert with the appropriate number of personnel within the time limits in the reference.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
3. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:****ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	10 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	100 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	40 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	100 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

---

**PRP-PS-4008:** Recapture strategic weapons within an exclusion structure

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** In this event the Recapture Tactics Team recaptures strategic weapons within an exclusion structure. Simunitions or MILES gear should be used when available to enhance the realism of the event. The actual structure should be utilized when conditions allow or, at a minimum, a structure similar to the actual for proper conduct of this event.

**CONDITION:** Given a properly trained, armed and equipped Recapture Tactics Team, in any environment, under any condition, day or night, and against a simulated enemy based on the reference postulated threat, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Recapture Tactics Team quickly and effectively executes recapture tactics and regains control of strategic weapons within the structure in accordance with the reference.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Marine Officer of the Day or Assistant Marine Officer of the Day will be located inside the Site Security Control Center.
2. Limited Area Force will provide perimeter security.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 5210.41 Security Policy for Protection Nuclear Weapons
2. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
3. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:****ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	10 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	80 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
 Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
 Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
 Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
 Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Rooms and buildings utilized for this event should replicate, to the greatest extent possible, the exclusion structure where actual contingency operations may take place. When possible, the actual exclusion structure should be used for this event.

---

**PRP-PS-4009:** Conduct entry into an exclusion structure

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** In the event that an Exclusion Area is compromised, certain TTPs must be utilized to enter the Exclusion Area and address the threat. In this event, the RTT Squad moves to and conducts dynamic entry into an exclusion structure within established time limits utilizing materials similar to breaching materials to display proper procedures.

**CONDITION:** Given a complete RTT Squad, proper weapons, equipment, breaching materials and vehicle, in any environmental condition, day or night, and against a simulated enemy threat postulated in the references, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** RTT Squad successfully moves to and conducts dynamic breach of the exclusion structure in the time limit established in the reference.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 5210.41 Security Policy for Protection Nuclear Weapons
2. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
3. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	20 Each
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	20 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	40 Each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	80 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 each

A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	10 Each
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	10

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
 Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
 Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
 Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
 Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
 Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**MCSF-CONV-4010:** Conduct motorcade operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 2 months

**DESCRIPTION:** A motorcade is a vehicle mounted protective security detail consisting of two or more vehicles moving as one. The purpose of a motorcade is to expeditiously and safely transport personnel or cargo from one point to another, minimizing its exposure as a potential target.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit conducting motorcade operations, required T/E equipment, a route reconnaissance, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Provide 360-degree security for a motorcade, moving from one point to another minimizing exposure as a potential target, successfully executing immediate action as required in accordance with the references.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Move to pick-up point.
2. Establish pick-up point security.
3. Integrate asset to be protected into convoy.
4. Move to drop-off point.
5. Establish drop-off point security.
6. Provide convoy progress reports to higher headquarters.
7. Return to base.
8. Conduct liaison with higher, adjacent, and host nation (OCONUS).

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 5-36 Route Reconnaissance and Classification
2. MCRP 4-11.3 Convoy Operations Handbook
3. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	10 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	100 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	10 each



**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**MCSF-CONV-4011:** Conduct route reconnaissance

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 2 months

**DESCRIPTION:** A convoy is a vehicle mounted protective security detail consisting of two or more vehicles moving as one. The purpose of a convoy is to expeditiously and safely transport personnel or cargo from one point to another, minimizing its exposure as a potential target. The route a convoy takes must be planned to ensure that choke points and hazardous areas are avoided. Additionally, convoys should be planned to avoid any events that may slow, delay, or stop the convoy. Ensure adequate security is provide during the route reconnaissance. Route reconnaissance can be conducted by map, with support of aerial assets, or physically by conducting a dry-run recon or a combination of all if possible.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit conducting convoy operations, required T/E equipment, and two routes to conduct reconnaissance, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Within a given time period, conduct an initial map reconnaissance of a primary and alternate route, plan for security of the reconnaissance force, identify primary and alternate routes, and conduct reconnaissance in order to avoid choke points, hazardous areas, there by minimizing exposure of the convoy as a potential target in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 5-36 Route Reconnaissance and Classification

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	100 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	40 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**MCSF-CONV-4012:** Conduct convoy rehearsals

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 2 months

**DESCRIPTION:** A convoy rehearsal is intended for the convoy security force to rehearse immediate actions to a hostile threat and op-check the communications plan. When possible, rehearsals should be conducted on terrain similar to the intended route. Of particular importance, if certain route intersections or choke points cannot be avoided, rehearsals should take place on terrain that approximates those danger areas as close as possible.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, the requirement to conduct convoy operations, required T/E equipment, motor vehicles, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Within the specified time, conduct a convoy rehearsal to ensure security force personnel understand immediate action drills to be performed to defend against hostile threats, and ensure communication within the convoy and to higher headquarters is functioning in accordance with the references.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Immediate actions may include but aren't limited to:
2. Sniper fire/harassing fire.
3. Blocked ambush.
4. Barricade ambush.
5. Disabled vehicle
6. Emergency evacuation.
7. Land mines

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCRP 4-11.3 Convoy Operations Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17906 Wheeled Vehicle Drivers Course  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**MCSF-CONV-4013:** Conduct convoy security force guard mount

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 2 months

**DESCRIPTION:** In support of convoy operations, the COG conducts the guard mount to establish manning for specified vehicle posts and duties (e.g., vehicle positions, sectors of fire, bump plan, etc.). Guard mount is normally conducted by the COG prior to departure of friendly lines where he briefs deadly force, rules of engagement, conducts personnel, weapons and equipment inspection, briefs special and general orders, vital intelligence, communications procedures, weapons handling, and immediate action procedures.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, the requirement to conduct convoy operations, required T/E equipment, vehicles, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Within a specified time, man vehicle posts with security force

personnel who understand special and general orders, rules of engagement, and prescribed weapons conditions in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 22-6 Guard Duty
2. MCRP 4-11.3 Convoy Operations Handbook
3. NAVMC 2691 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual

---

**MCSF-CONV-4014:** Provide body bunker security for principle

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 2 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Body bunkers are used to protect the principle and maintain security in all directions. The body bunker prevents any contact with the principle, and limits visibility of the principle during movement. There are various methods to construct a body bunker while transporting the principle to include, use of body-on-body armor protection, sandbag reinforcement of vehicle, or use of Kevlar blankets and/or additional vehicle armor plating or reinforcement.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, a principle or VIP, T/E equipment, necessary reinforcing materials, vehicles organized into a motorcade, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Establish and maintain physical security measures around principle or VIP while transitioning principle from a secure location to a vehicle within the motorcade and from the vehicle to a secure location when motorcade is complete in accordance with the references.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish all around security for the principle with one Marine designated to cover the front, the rear, and either side of the principle, creating a bunker around the VIP.
2. Prevent any outside contact with the VIP while directing VIP from secure location to the Motorcade vehicle.
3. If contact occurs, protect VIP and immediately move him to closest secure location.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
2. MCRP 3-02 Combating Terrorism
3. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	10 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	100 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	40 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	100 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17906 Wheeled Vehicle Drivers Course  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

---

**MCSF-CONV-4015:** Conduct a screen during a motorcade

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 2 months

**DESCRIPTION:** A vehicle or vehicles will provide a moving, vehicle-on-vehicle covering force for the principle vehicle when conducting motorcade operations. Sufficient vehicles should be employed to provide the principle vehicle 360-degree protection.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, principle or VIP, principle vehicle, designated security vehicles, T/E equipment, a motorcade route and destination, a threat to the motorcade, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Security forces must establish a screening force to maintain security for the principle vehicle minimizing threats and preventing any interference with the motorcade in accordance with the references

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Security member of the motorcade recognizes potential threat and communicates this threat to convoy commander.
2. Convoy commander measures threat, designates and informs a security vehicle, or vehicles, to screen principle vehicle from potential threat.
3. Vehicle, or vehicles, designated to protect principle vehicle quickly position themselves between principle vehicle and threats becoming a screening force..
4. Vehicles maintain screen of principle vehicle until threat has been destroyed, neutralized, or mitigated.
5. When threat no longer exists, screening vehicles will recover and fall back into original motorcade order.

**REFERENCES:**

1. AR 525-13 Antiterrorism
2. DoDD 2000.12 DOD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
3. MCRP 4-11.3 Convoy Operations Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17906 Wheeled Vehicle Drivers Course

---

**MCSF-CONV-4016:** Conduct a block during a motorcade

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 2 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Once a threat has been identified, the security vehicle places itself between the threat and the principle vehicle or motorcade in order to block the threat line of fire, IED or obstacle and deny access to the motorcade.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, principle or VIP, principle vehicle, designated security vehicle, motorcade route, and a threat to the motorcade, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Upon command to establish a block by the motorcade commander, the motorcade will execute the block in a timely and safe manner in accordance with the references.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Security member of the motorcade recognizes potential threat and communicates this threat to convoy commander.
2. Convoy commander measures threat, designates and informs a security vehicle, or vehicles, to block principle vehicle from potential threat.
3. Vehicle, or vehicles, designated to protect principle vehicle quickly position themselves between principle vehicle and threats becoming a blocking force.
4. Vehicles maintain block of principle vehicle until threat has been destroyed, neutralized, or mitigated.
5. When threat no longer exists, blocking vehicles will recover and fall back into original motorcade order.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 4-11.3 Convoy Operations Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17906 Wheeled Vehicle Drivers Course

---

**MCSF-CONV-4017:** Perform a reverse out

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 2 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This procedure is executed to change a convoy or motorcade's direction of travel 180 degrees. The convoy/motorcade conducts a reverse out when the primary route is blocked or there is a high threat in the direction of travel.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, convoy or motorcade, designated security vehicles, convoy/motorcade route and destination, a threat to the vehicles,

under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** When given the command "reverse out" by the convoy/motorcade commander, the motorcade or convoy will execute the command in a timely and safe manner, completing a 180-degree turn in accordance with the references.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Convoy commander identifies threat and communicates reverse out command to convoy drivers.
2. All vehicles make a 3-point turn moving in the same direction and reverse the route of the direction of the motorcade away from the identified threat while security shooters maintain all around security.
3. Turret gunner and/or designated security shooters hold cover on identified threat.
4. Motorcade recovers original formation with vehicle order reversed from original order.
5. Convoy or motorcade moves to alternate route or returns to a secure location.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 4-11.3 Convoy Operations Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

Facility Code 17906 Wheeled Vehicle Drivers Course

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

### 3060. 5000-LEVEL COLLECTIVE TRAINING EVENTS

---

**MCSF-PS-5001:** Establish interior guard

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** The interior guard is established during site security operations in order to provide continuous physical security of a vital asset.

**CONDITION:** Given a Security Force unit, manned with appropriate personnel and equipment, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Within the designated time limit, dictated by the mission, assign Security Force personnel to guard posts and shifts and establish a continuous and sustainable guard force in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 22-6 Guard Duty
2. NAVMC 2691 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
3. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	10 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	100 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	40 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	100 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area

---

**MCSF-PS-5002:** Establish/execute react force

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 4 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Reaction force positions are placed in a designated area within the secure site. Reaction force positions are designed and ready to respond to a threat and instructed on primary direction of fire (PDF), from previously designated positions in the event that additional forces are needed to augment the standing guard posts or to address specific additional threats identified by watch standers such as crowd control, increased vehicle traffic, search procedures and detainee handling.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, manned with appropriate personnel and T/E equipment, under any condition, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Establish reaction force positions in covered/concealed locations where the reaction force can best support the overall mission of the guard force in accordance with the references.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Designate defendable positions for reactionary forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 2000.12 DOD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	20 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	100 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

---

**MCSF-PS-5003:** Establish site security

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** While sweep and clear actions are being completed, the unit leader is developing the scheme of maneuver for site security. In organizing the perimeter, a detailed terrain analysis is conducted, major avenues of approach are identified, requirements for obstacles are determined, and implementation of barrier plan to control the flow of vehicles and pedestrians is conducted.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, designated guard force personnel, an area to be secured, appropriate T/E equipment, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Establish a secure site ensuring 360-degree coverage, a minimum of two-man fighting positions, overlapping fields of fire as designated on a fire-plan sketch, properly positioned LP/OPs, effective barriers, and fully operational entry/exit points capable of conducting personnel and vehicle searches in accordance with the reference.



**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish initial 360-degree security
2. Implement barrier plan
3. Establish ECP/VCP
4. Establish Initial Reaction Force
5. Position anti-armor and machine-gun assets
6. Establish DM positions
7. Establish individual and roving posts
8. Construct obstacles outside perimeter
9. Harden positions
10. Establish spaces for billeting, armory, medical, and COC.
11. Establish motor pool and personnel detention area.
12. Establish wire and radio communications plan.
13. Establish a guard rotation.
14. Establish a dedicated reaction force.
15. Establish a Security Alert Team.
16. Conduct reinforcement rehearsals.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6 Ground Combat Operations
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:****ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	20 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	100 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

---

**MCSF-PS-5004:** Execute security sweep of the area

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Mission requires that an area, vessel or facility be secured. The guard force conducts tactical movement and actions necessary to clear unauthorized personnel, and identify/mark suspicious objects within the area to be secured. Utilization of external or attached elements are recommended such as EOD or MWD to ensure complete security is established. Terminology for this evolution should mirror the following: AREA IN CONTROL (Area Command and Control have been taken over), AREA SECURE (All positively identified threats have been neutralized and secured), AREA CLEAR (All possible threats and/or IED's or hidden threats located and neutralized or contained).

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, appropriate T/E, an area to be secured, appropriate personnel and objects to simulate unauthorized personnel and suspicious objects, under any condition, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Within the specified period, conduct a sweep of the area to be secured and identify/detain unauthorized personnel, and mark suspicious objects in accordance with the reference.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6 Ground Combat Operations
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	20 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	100 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

---

**PRP-PS-5005:** Recapture strategic weapons within a limited area

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Personal Reliability Program (PRP) Marines must be prepared to respond to any contingency involving the seizure of a nuclear weapons facility or nuclear weapons themselves. The pivotal organization in this scenario is the Recapture Tactics Team who will have the ultimate responsibility of seizing and gaining control of the facility or weapon. Since this scenario may involve non-combatants who work in the facility, simunitions or MILES gear should be used to create a realistic environment and drive PRP Marines to employ sound marksmanship skills.

**CONDITION:** Given a fully manned and equipped guard force, including a Recapture Tactics Team, under any condition, in any environment, day or night, against a simulated threat postulated in the reference and with the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Plan and execute a recapture of strategic weapons in a limited area ensuring that non-combatants remain safe and nuclear facilities or weapons are returned to US government control in accordance with the reference.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 5210.41 Security Policy for Protection Nuclear Weapons

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:****ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	169 per RTT Member, 150 per Designated Marksman Team, 100 per Security Element Member
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	60 per RTT Member, Designated Marksman Member.
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	60 per Designated Marksman Team
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	4 per RTT Member

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17510 Basic 10M-25M Firing Range (Zero)  
Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17560 Sniper Field-Fire Range  
Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range

---

**MCSF-CMDC-5006:** Establish a command operations center

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** During security operations, a command operations center will always be established in order to provide continuous command and control of the security force. The COC will be established immediately upon activation of the site for administrative, logistical, organizational, communications and tactical operations.

**CONDITION:** Given a security mission, an area to secure, a guard force, appropriate T/E equipment, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Establish a COC within a specified period of time, with all logbooks, communications, status boards, and intelligence updates conducted for any type of security mission in accordance with the references.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish communications and open logbooks to support the mission
2. Continuously monitor all posts, radio traffic and intelligence traffic during the duration of the mission
3. All information and data will be passed to the COC in the prescribed format, logged in, and passed on to the chain of command
4. Marine posted at COC will be thoroughly familiar with duties of post, maintain logbooks, and status boards, and act as Intel NCO while on post
5. Watch will ensure intelligence update binder is updated and accurate

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6 Ground Combat Operations
2. MCRP 3-11.1 Commander's Tactical Handbook

### 3. FMFM 3-1 Command and Staff Action

#### **SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

##### **RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

---

**MCSF-CMDC-5007:** Conduct split-site security operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Situations will arise that require the security force to conduct site security at more than one location. The security element commander will need to task organize to effectively accomplish both missions. While sweep and clear actions are being completed, the scheme of maneuver for site security is being developed by the unit leader. In organizing the perimeter, a detailed terrain analysis is conducted, major avenues of approach are identified, requirements for obstacles are determined, and implementation of the barrier plan to control the flow of vehicles and pedestrians is conducted.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, the requirement to establish security at two sites, all T/E equipment, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** The security force task organizes to accomplish multiple site security missions. Within a designated period of time, determination of site security requirements is made for both sites, to include but not limited to conducting a detailed terrain analysis, identifying major avenues of approach, assignment of specific posts (e.g., entry control point, roving posts, designated marksman, machinegun posts, observation posts), requirements for obstacles is determined, and development and implementation of a barrier plan to adequately control the flow of vehicles and pedestrians in accordance with the references.

#### **REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6 Ground Combat Operations
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

#### **SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

##### **ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	20 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	100 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup

---

**MCSF-CMDC-5008:** Establish maritime/pierside security

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 6

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Maritime/pierside facilities and vital assets worldwide require protection. MCSF may be deployed to provide protection by conducting sweep and clear actions, establishing and manning guard force posts, and by conducting immediate actions to counter threats. Site security can be either land based or on board naval vessels or platforms. A security zone must be established around the site and aggressive measures undertaken to deter, isolate, delay, and defend against waterborne threats.

**CONDITION:** Given a site, guard forces, all T/E equipment, the requirement to conduct security operations, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Within a specified time period conduct sweep and clear actions and perform interior guard procedures in order to gain control of the designated site. If possible coordination with small boat units, ships crew, and other military pier/harbor defense assets is critical to providing accurate and responsive actions to threats in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. AR 525-13 Antiterrorism
2. DoD O-2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism Handbook
3. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:****ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	20 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	100 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

---

**MCSF-CMDC-5009:** Plan for reaction to a civil disturbance

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 4 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Inherent to all site security missions is the possibility of a civil disturbance affecting the security mission. Marines assigned to MCSFBn must be able to react to a civil disturbance quickly and effectively so the unit can regain its focus on the primary mission of site security. Improperly handled, civil disturbances can quickly drain the security force of much needed manpower and leave weaknesses in the overall defense.

**CONDITION:** Given a civil disturbance scenario at a security site, a guard force equipped with either lethal or non-lethal capabilities, all T/E equipment, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Develop a civil disturbance plan, rehearse actions, and employ forces necessary to prevent a civil disturbance from interfering with security operations and ensure protection and security of personnel and equipment in accordance with the references.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Assess local population threat.
2. Establish criteria for employing non-lethal capability during a civil disturbance.
3. Determine vital areas that are subject to the threat of a civil disturbance.
4. Rehearse employment of reaction force with non-lethal capability.
5. Coordinate with host nation security element for handling of civilians and civilian detainees.
6. Establish communication procedures with reaction force.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6 Ground Combat Operations
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. FM 19-15 Civil Disturbances

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

**EQUIPMENT:** Training units should have a full compliment of riot control gear on-hand to accomplish this event to include, batons, shields, face shields, and any non-lethal equipment utilized by security forces during riot control.

---

**MCSF-CMDC-5010:** Plan for detainee/prisoner of war (POW) handling

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Security missions will require interaction with personnel that may be necessary to detain in order to successfully conduct the mission. The security force needs to plan for the requirement to secure detainees within the perimeter and have a plan for controlling them and turning them over to the proper authorities.

**CONDITION:** Given a guard force, all T/E equipment, an area to be secured, appropriate equipment and resources to establish site security, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Develop a plan and brief the entire security force on the handling of detainees and the location of the detention center within the security site. Key leaders must coordinate with proper local or government authorities for the safe and expeditious transfer of detainees in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. SECNAVINST 5500.29 Use of Force by Personnel Engaged in Law Enforcement and Security duties
2. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations
3. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

Facility Code 17904 Prisoner Of War Training Area

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**MCSF-CMDC-5011:** Conduct a debriefing

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** During site security missions, guard force members may encounter individuals who offer information relating to security operations, or guard force members may detain hostile individuals with information relating to enemy operations that impact the security posture. Additionally, debriefs at a group or convoy level may be conducted to gather information on a broad perspective relating to route security, terrain, environment and enemy and friendly positions within the area of operation. Attached personnel such as intelligence representatives, Counter-Intel Agents or Federal CI Agents should be utilized to ensure all information is gathered and disseminated in the appropriate manner.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, all T/E equipment, a site to secure, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing all available intelligence gathering sources, debrief, interview, collect and disseminate information gathered from available sources in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 34-5 Human Intelligence and Related Counterintelligence Operations
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. FMFM 3-1 Command and Staff Action

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:****RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17330 Covered Training Area

---

**MCSF-CMDC-5012:** Employ procedures for the use of force

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** During contingency and combat operations, forces will be required to brief the guard force members on the use and applicability of force. This will include obtaining ROE from local area commanders or legal officials, conducting scenario-based training prior to posting the guard force, the elements of the continuum of force, and temper and intent as it applies to the type of environment the force is deployed to.

**CONDITION:** Given a guard force, all T/E equipment, the requirement to establish ROE and use of force, under any condition and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Employ the procedures for the use of force with respect to the ROE and in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. SECNAVINST 5500.29 Use of Force by Personnel Engaged in Law Enforcement and Security duties

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:****RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**FAST-CMDC-5013:** Conduct platoon deployment in support of operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** History and possible future operations may dictate that forces be prepared to deploy in company strength. However, traditionally, forces are deployed at the platoon level in this community. This can encompass entire platoon T/O, T/E and attachments for deployment in support of contingency or combat operations worldwide.



**CONDITION:** Given a FAST platoon, the requirement to deploy, all T/E equipment, in any environment, and with the aid of references

**STANDARD:** Conduct a platoon deployment in support of contingency or combat operations within the time limit prescribed in the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations
2. FMFM 3-1 Command and Staff Action

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**FAST-CMDC-5014:** Employ Designated Marksman teams

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 4 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Identify situations for the effective employment of Designated Marksman (DM) teams in a combat environment that capitalizes on the capabilities of the weapon and individual skill organic to a DM Team.

**CONDITION:** Given a DM team, the requirement to employ DM, all T/E equipment, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Effectively employ organic DM weapons systems to identify and eliminate possible threat targets while conducting fixed site security operations as directed by the FAST platoon commander in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCSFBN DM DRILL GUIDE Marine Corps Security Force Battalion Designated Marksman Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A130 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Clip	10 Each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17560 Sniper Field-Fire Range

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**FAST-CMDC-5015:** Conduct vulnerability and site assessments at designated installations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** As a member of a FAST Platoon HQ element, designated installations such as naval facilities, embassies, consulates, or other high value assets abroad may require threat and vulnerability assessment in order to determine if, an increase in security measures are warranted by providing additional forces or, passive security measures need to be installed.

**CONDITION:** Given a FAST platoon, T/E equipment, the requirement to conduct a vulnerability or site assessment, under any condition, and with the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Conduct vulnerability and site assessments, identify weaknesses in security, prioritize critical infrastructure, and recommend security measures to mitigate threats in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. AR 525-13 Antiterrorism
2. DoD O-2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism Handbook
3. DoDD 2000.12 DOD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

---

**FAST-CMDC-5016:** Conduct recapture of a vital asset

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 2 months

**DESCRIPTION:** In an established site, buildings or facilities will be designated as vital assets and may require a FAST platoon to recapture them due to hostile actions. Individuals and squads in FAST platoons must be proficient in basic urban skills in order to apply the tactics necessary to recapture vital assets. Simunitions or MILES gear should be used whenever possible to enhance the realism of the training and reinforce basic marksmanship skills.

**CONDITION:** Given a fully manned FAST platoon, all T/E equipment, under any condition, in any environment, day or night, against a simulated threat, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Plan, rehearse, and conduct a recapture mission on a known vital building, vessel or designated facility in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
3. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:****ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	10 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	40 Each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	10 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17911 Air Transport Mockup  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

---

**MCSF-CONV-5017:** Plan for convoy/motorcade

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 5, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** A convoy is a vehicle mounted protective security detail consisting of two or more vehicles moving as one. The purpose of a convoy is to expeditiously and safely transport personnel or cargo from one point to another, minimizing its exposure as a potential target.

**CONDITION:** Given security force mission, a route with a start point and end point, two or more vehicles and cargo.

**STANDARD:** Within a specified time develop a route security plan, issue convoy brief, complete convoy preparations list, and establish time for immediate action drills rehearsal.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCRP 4-11.3 Convoy Operations Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:****RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

---

## 3070. 6000-LEVEL COLLECTIVE TRAINING STANDARDS

---

**MCSF-PS-6001:** Conduct anti-terrorism/force protection intelligence brief

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Assessing current terrorist activity and situation based on intelligence, the ability to produce accurate vulnerability assessments, and the ability to accurately convey this information to those who need to know.

**CONDITION:** Given the requirement to conduct a terrorism brief, appropriate intelligence reports, a designated location, and with the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Evaluate intelligence, create vulnerability assessments, and properly brief designated personnel in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. AR 525-13 Antiterrorism
2. DoD O-2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism Handbook
3. DoDD 2000.12 DOD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
4. DoDI 2000.16 DOD Antiterrorism Standards

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17330 Covered Training Area

---

**PRP-PS-6002:** Conduct augmentation of posted security forces

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Situations may arise where the manpower available to the posted guard force is not sufficient to handle a particular contingency. In such cases, Marine Corps Security Force Company conducts augmentation of posted guard force with designated off-post Marines.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, all recall lists, orders, SOPs and equipment, during hours other than normal working hours, in all conditions, and with the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Marine Corps Security Force Company provides 15 Marines, with all required weapons, equipment and transportation to the posted guard force within one hour of augmentation notification in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 5210.41 Security Policy for Protection Nuclear Weapons
2. NAVMC 2691 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
3. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	20 each
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 each
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	100 each
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 each
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

---

**MCSF-CMDC-6003:** Coordinate with higher/adjacent/supporting units

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 5 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Coordination measures need to be established with higher/adjacent/supporting units of deployed forces from the command in order to ensure ease of embark/debark of forces, country clearances, diplomatic clearances, host nation support, and a possibility of various external agencies that may support the company's deployed forces. Proper liaison with these agencies is vital to seamless deployment and redeployment execution.

**CONDITION:** Given MCSF units deployed or forces to be deployed, all T/E equipment, higher/adjacent/supporting units, the requirement to coordinate and facilitate information flow in support of forces, under any condition, and with the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Employ procedures and protocol necessary to make proper coordination for forces deployed or forces to be deployed in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6 Ground Combat Operations
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. FMFM 3-1 Command and Staff Action

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

---

**MCSF-CMDC-6004:** Maintain an alert force in support of operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Company's are directed by MCSF to maintain one FAST platoon, designated "Alpha 1" for tasking by USJFCOM to contingency missions worldwide. This platoon will stand ready to deploy and depart on a minimum 24-hour timeline from initial notification. Additionally, a second platoon designated "Alpha 2" that stands ready to fleet up to "Alpha 1" status upon deployment of the current "Alpha 1" platoon.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, all T/E equipment, under any condition, and with the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Employ procedures and protocol for maintaining an alert force in support of operations. Personnel and equipment readiness inspections should be routinely conducted to ensure the alert force is prepared to deploy within the specified time with all equipment in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6 Ground Combat Operations
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17960 Parade And Drill Field

---

**MCSF-CMDC-6005:** Conduct company deployment in support of operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Traditionally, MCSF units are deployed at the platoon level. History and possible future operations dictate that forces be prepared to deploy in company strength. This can encompass the entire company T/O for deployment or as a company (minus) (reinforced) in support of contingency or combat operations worldwide.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF company, all T/E equipment, a deployment order, under any condition, and with the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Conduct a company deployment training exercise that simulates the requirement to plan, organize, coordinate, and execute the movement of personnel and equipment to a simulated airfield, accounting for all personnel and equipment and conducting movement in an organized manner in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6 Ground Combat Operations
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

Facility Code 17960 Parade And Drill Field

---

### 3080. 7000-LEVEL COLLECTIVE TRAINING STANDARDS

---

**MCSF-CMDC-7001:** Plan contingency and combat operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Security forces are required to be able to deploy to any theatre within 24 hours for a variety of contingency operations. This requires a focused and determined effort by the staff to ensure that the unit is properly prepared and equipped to deal with a variety of combat missions and logistical concerns.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, the requirement to plan combat operations, all T/E equipment, under any condition, and with the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Within 6 hours, recall MCSF units and activate the contingency planning cell in order to deploy security forces within 24 hours in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6 Ground Combat Operations
2. JP 3-07 Joint Doctrine for Military Operations Other Than War
3. MCRP 3-11.1 Commander's Tactical Handbook
4. FMFM 3-1 Command and Staff Action

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**MCSF-CMDC-7002:** Plan coordination with external agencies

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Security forces are required to be able to deploy to any theatre within 24 hours for a variety of contingency operations. This requires a focused and determined effort by the staff to ensure that the unit is properly prepared and equipped to deal with a variety of threats and logistical concerns. Inherent in this task is coordinating with various agencies to ensure the unit is properly equipped with the necessary attachments (i.e. EOD, Military Working Dogs, Counter-Intel support, etc.) and logistical support.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, the requirement to deploy, all T/E equipment, under any condition, and with the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Within six hours determine required attachments and coordinate with external agencies for support, ensuring that attachments are properly



briefed on contingency operations and given all necessary deployment information in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 3-1 Command and Staff Action

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**MCSF-CMDC-7003:** Direct the intelligence effort

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Security Forces need to be prepared to deploy to contingency operations in any area of operation. This requires a varied and flexible intelligence effort. Intelligence personnel need to be able to provide constant updates to commanders deployed in various theatres and also rapidly gather threat information for possible contingency operations.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit required to deploy in 24 hours, the requirement to gather, process, and disseminate intelligence, under any condition, and with the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing all available resources, gather information on potential threats in a given area of operations and disseminate to security force commanders and the contingency planning cell in a timely manner in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 34-5 Human Intelligence and Related Counterintelligence Operations
2. FMFM 3-1 Command and Staff Action

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

---

**MCSF-CMDC-7004:** Disseminate intelligence

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Security Forces need to be prepared to deploy for contingency operations in any theatre. This requires a varied and flexible intelligence

effort. Intelligence personnel need to be able to provide constant updates to commanders deployed in various theatres and also rapidly gather threat information for possible contingency operations.

**CONDITION:** A security force contingency operation that requires deploying forces in 24 hours to an area that has hostile threats.

**STANDARD:** In 6 hours gather and disseminate all available intelligence on hostile threats in the area of operations to the security force commander and contingency planning cell.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 34-5 Human Intelligence and Related Counterintelligence Operations
2. FMFM 3-1 Command and Staff Action

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**MCSF-CMDC-7005:** Plan logistics support

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Security forces are required to be able to deploy to any theatre within 24 hours for a variety of contingency operations. This requires a focused and determined effort by the staff to ensure the unit is properly prepared and equipped to deal with a variety of threats and logistical concerns.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, the requirement to deploy, all T/E equipment, under any condition, and with the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** In six hours determine logistical support necessary to deploy security force to contingency operation. Provide and transport all necessary gear and coordinate with proper agencies to ensure arrival of security force and gear to area of operations within 24 hours in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6 Ground Combat Operations
2. FMFM 3-1 Command and Staff Action

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**MCSF-CMDC-7006:** Plan communications interoperability

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Security missions require interoperability with various forces and agencies that use varying means of communications. The security force needs to be able to communicate with all these forces in order to accomplish their mission.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, the requirement to deploy in 24 hours, all T/E equipment, under any condition, and with the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Within 6 hours develop and disseminate a communications plan and issue communications equipment to the security force commander in accordance with the references.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 2000.12 DOD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. FM 24-18 Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communication Techniques
3. FM 24-1 COMBAT COMMUNICATIONS
4. FMFM 3-1 Command and Staff Action

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

MCSF BN T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

INDIVIDUAL TRAINING

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	4000	4-3
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES . . . . .	4010	4-3
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL TRAINING BY FUNCTIONAL AREA . . . . .	4020	4-4
INDIVIDUAL TRAINING EVENTS . . . . .	4030	4-5

(This page intentionally left blank)

## MCSF BN T&R MANUAL

### CHAPTER 4

#### INDIVIDUAL TRAINING

##### **4000. PURPOSE**

This chapter includes all individual training events for Marine Corps Security Force Battalion (MCSF Bn). An individual event is an event that a trained MCSF Bn Marine (8152, Marine Corps Security Force Guard/8154, Marine Corps Security Force Close Quarters Battle Team Member) would accomplish in the execution of Mission Essential Tasks. These events are linked to a Service-Level Mission Essential Task (MET). This linkage tailors individual and collective training for the selected MET. Each event is composed of an individual event title, event description, condition, and standard. Accomplishment and proficiency level required is determined by the event standard.

##### **4010. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES**

T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event has a 4-4-4 character identifier.

- a. The first four characters represent the MOS or community:

8152 - Marine Corps Security Force (MCSF) Guard

8154 - Marine Corps Security Force (MCSF) Close Quarters Battle Team Member

MCSF - Marine Corps Security Forces

FAST - Fleet Antiterrorism Support Team

PRP - Personal Reliability Program

- b. The second four characters represent the functional or duty area. This chapter contains the duty areas listed below. See Appendix A for functional area descriptions.

AT - Antiterrorism

PS - Physical Security

CMDC - Command and Control

CONV - Convoy

CQB - Close Quarters Battle

The last four characters represent the level (1000, 2000) and sequence (1001-1999) of the event.

2. The MCSF Bn individual training events are separated into two levels:

1000 - Core Skills

2000 - Core Plus Skills

##### **4020. INDIVIDUAL CORE CAPABILITIES**

8152: BASIC SECURITY GUARD - Career Progression Philosophy. Due to the time spent as a Basic Security Guard (BSG) (MOS 8152) within Marine Corps Security Forces Battalion (MCSFBn), the opportunity for career progression is minimal. BSG Marines spend only 18 to 36 months with MCSFBn before returning to the Fleet Marine Force (FMF). This does not allow ample time to progress an individual Marine's career. The order in which a Marine moves through MCSFBn is as follows:

1. Be found qualified to serve in MCSFBn
2. Attend and graduate from the MCSF BSG Course
3. Be assigned to a unit within MCSFBn
4. Complete a successful tour in MCSFBn

Billet Description. Marine Corps Security Force Marines are trained, equipped and assigned to Marine Security Forces (MCSF) in support of Navy bases/stations and the Fleet Anti-terrorism Security Team (FAST) Deployment Program. In addition, 8152's provide security for strategic weapons and strategic communications at designated naval installations along with providing site security for nuclear refuel/de-fuel operations and provide security at designated contingency sites. 8152's are also responsible for augmenting or reinforcing security at designated American Embassies or Consulates, as well as other facilities or assets that have exceeded their organic capabilities. Furthermore, 8152's maintain readiness to deploy as a FAST contingency alert platoon within 24hrs.

Initially 8152's are trained and given the fundamental knowledge and skills required for service as a basic security guard assigned to Marine Corps Security Forces Battalion. The Marine will receive instruction on the service pistol, rifle and shotgun, weapons retention, force continuum, deadly force, defensive tactics (self-defense), security operations, physical security, terrorist tactics and protective measures. Upon graduation the Marine will receive the additional Military Occupational Specialty of 8152.

Private through Sergeant are eligible for Marine Corps Security Forces Battalion Duty. Students must be in a full duty status with no medical or physical limitations, be capable of reading at an eighth grade level, and be qualified with the service rifle.

Core Skills. Core skills are those essential skills that enable the Marine to perform as a BSG. Completion of the core skills in the initial formal school, qualify a Marine for the MOS 8152. The following core skills are identified for MOS 8152:

1. Perform weapons handling with the M9 Service Pistol.
2. Perform preventative maintenance on the M9 Service Pistol.
3. Engage a stationary target with the M9 Service Pistol.
4. Engage a target from cover with the M9 Service Pistol.
5. Engage multiple targets with the M9 Service Pistol.
6. Engage moving targets with the M9 Service Pistol.

7. Engage targets during low light and darkness with the M9 Service Pistol.
8. Engage short-range targets with the service rifle.
9. Perform weapons handling with the Service Shotgun.
10. Perform preventative maintenance on the Service Shotgun.
11. Pattern the Service Shotgun.
12. Engage a stationary target with the Service Shotgun.
13. Engage multiple targets with the Service Shotgun.
14. Engage moving targets with the Service Shotgun.
15. Engage targets during low light and darkness with the Service Shotgun.

Billet Applicability. The basic duties and core skills for all 8152 MOS assigned within MCSFBN are similar. However, each company within the battalion serves a different mission, requiring the 8152 to execute his duties in a different manner. The duties and responsibilities of the companies within MCSFBN are discussed below.

1. The duties and responsibilities listed above apply to all 8152's assigned to the following units:

- a. 1st FASTCo
- b. 2nd FASTCo
- c. 3d FASTCo
- d. IMCSFCo Bahrain
- e. MCSFCo Training Center Northwest
- f. MCSFCo Bangor
- g. MCSFCo Europe
- h. MCSFCo Guantanamo Bay, Cuba
- i. MCSFCo Kings Bay
- j. MCSFCo Patuxent River

2. In addition to the duties and responsibilities listed, 8152's assigned to MCSFCO Training Center Northwest must also be capable of providing subject matter expertise and guidance to subordinate units and ensure they provide each unit with a well trained 8152.

Supporting Establishment Billets. There are several billets in the supporting establishment required to effectively support MCSF BSG'S in the Marine Corps.



The duties and responsibilities of the personnel assigned are billet dependent. Tasks include: determining personnel and equipment requirements, conduct of range operations, range safety supervision, range maintenance, martial arts instructions, use of force, circumstance for the use of force, justification for the use of force, non-lethal weapons employment, modern technology gear employment. Some of the billets are listed below.

- a. Weapons Officer
- b. Weapons Chief
- c. Range Safety Officer
- d. Line NCO
- e. Primary Marksmanship Instructor
- f. Shooting House SNCOIC
- g. Tactics Officer
- h. Tactics Chief
- i. Tactics Instructor
- j. Physical Security Chief
- k. Physical Security Instructor
- l. MCSF Bn

8154: CLOSE QUARTERS BATTLE MEMBER - Career Progression Philosophy. Due to the time spent training to be a CQB member, and as a Basic Security Guard (BSG) (MOS 8152) within Marine Corps Security Forces Battalion (MCSFBn), the opportunity for career progression as Close Quarters Battle member (CQB) (MOS 8154) is minimal. CQB Marines are required to spend time in the guard force before being selected as a Re-capture & Tactics Team (RTT) member. This does not allow ample time to progress an individual Marine's career. The order in which an 8154 Marine would move through MCSFBn is as follows:

1. Found qualified to serve in MCSFBN
2. Attend, and graduate from, the MCSF BSG Course
3. Assigned to one of MCSFBn's PRP commands
4. Serve time on guard force
5. Attend and graduate from the MCSF CQB Course
6. Complete a successful tour in MCSFBN

Billet Description. Designed to train designated Marine Corps Security Forces Battalion personnel for Close Quarters Battle operations. This course is built to train Marines for the recapture missions of the Marine Security Force Company, Bangor, Washington and Marine Security Force Company, King's Bay, Georgia. Students will be trained in Close Quarters Battle tactics,

techniques and procedures to restore security, prevent damage, or removal of vital naval assets. These tactics, techniques and procedures include the safe handling and proper employment of Close Quarters Battle weapons and tactics. Students will become well versed in Close Quarters Battle techniques and tactics to support the recapture of United States Naval Special Weapons assets. The training will test designated personnel through performance evaluation to include written testing, tactical evaluation, practical application, force on force simulation training, and live fire exercises clearing multiple level structures and enclosures in a permissive/semi-permissive environment, NBC environment and in conditions of reduced visibility.

Core Skills. Core skills are those essential skills that enable the Marine to perform as a RTT member. Completion of the core skills in the initial formal school qualifies a Marine for the MOS 8154. The following core skills are identified for MOS 8154:

Billet Applicability. The basic duties and core skills for all 8154's assigned within MCSF Bn are similar. However, each company within the battalion serves a different mission, requiring the 8154 to execute his duties in a different manner. The duties and responsibilities of the companies within MCSFBn are discussed below.

1. All 8154 MOS assigned to the following units duties and responsibilities are those listed above in the billet description and core skills.

- a. MCSFCo Bangor
- b. MCSFCo Kings Bay

2. In addition to the duties and responsibilities listed, 8154's assigned to the following units must also be capable of providing subject matter expertise and guidance to subordinate units and ensure they provide each unit with a well trained 8154.

- a. MCSFCo Training Center Northwest

Supporting Establishment Billets. There are several billets in the supporting establishment required to effectively support MCSF CQB members in the Marine Corps. The duties and responsibilities of the personnel assigned are billet dependent. Tasks include: determining personnel and equipment requirements, conduct of range operations, range safety supervision, range maintenance, and sight surveys. Some of the billets are listed below.

- a. Weapons Officer
- b. Weapons Chief
- c. Advanced Range Safety Officer
- d. Line NCO
- e. Primary Marksmanship Instructor
- f. Shooting House SNCOIC

g. MCSFBn

4030. USE OF THIS MANUAL FOR INDIVIDUAL TRAINING. Due to the versatile use of Marines assigned to MCSF Bn, this manual has been designed to meet diverse training needs. Marines train to Individual Events for both their billet MOS (8152, 8154) and the type of unit to which they are assigned (MCSF, FAST, PRP).

4030. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

8152-AT-1001	Identify Anti-Terrorism/Force Protection measures
8152-AT-1002	Identify terrorist organization and characteristics
8152-PS-1003	Conduct guard mount
8152-PS-1004	Supervise posting of the guard as the corporal of the guard
8152-PS-1005	Establish an entry control point
8152-PS-1006	Conduct individual protective measures
8152-PS-1007	Conduct continuum of force techniques
8152-PS-1008	Apply deadly force
8152-PS-1009	Augment a reaction force
8152-PS-1010	Safeguard classified material
8152-PS-1011	Stand post
8152-WPNS-1012	Perform weapons handling with the Service pistol
8152-WPNS-1013	Perform preventive maintenance on the Service pistol
8152-WPNS-1014	Engage a stationary target with the Service pistol
8152-WPNS-1015	Engage a target from cover with the Service pistol
8152-WPNS-1016	Engage multiple targets with the Service pistol
8152-WPNS-1017	Engage moving targets with the Service pistol
8152-WPNS-1018	Engage targets during low light and darkness with the Service pistol
8152-WPNS-1019	Perform weapons handling procedures with the Service rifle
8152-WPNS-1020	Engage short-range targets with the Service rifle
8152-WPNS-1021	Perform weapons handling procedures with the Service shotgun
8152-WPNS-1022	Perform preventive maintenance on the Service shotgun
8152-WPNS-1023	Pattern the Service shotgun
8152-WPNS-1024	Engage a stationary target with the Service shotgun
8152-WPNS-1025	Engage multiple targets with the Service shotgun
8152-WPNS-1026	Engage moving targets with the Service shotgun

8152-WPNS-1027	Engage targets during low light and darkness with the Service shotgun
8154-CQB-1028	Perform weapons handling procedures with the Service pistol
8154-CQB-1029	Engage stationary targets with the Service pistol
8154-CQB-1030	Engage limited exposure targets with the Service pistol
8154-CQB-1031	Engage targets in low light and darkness with the Service pistol
8154-CQB-1032	Engage multiple targets with the Service pistol
8154-CQB-1033	Engage moving targets with the Service pistol
8154-CQB-1034	Engage targets while on the move with the Service pistol
8154-CQB-1035	Perform weapons handling procedures with the M-4 Carbine
8154-CQB-1036	Maintain the M-4 Carbine
8154-CQB-1037	Zero the M-4 Carbine
8154-CQB-1038	Engage stationary targets with the M-4 Carbine
8154-CQB-1039	Engage limited exposure targets with the M-4 Carbine
8154-CQB-1040	Engage targets during low light and darkness with the M-4 Carbine
8154-CQB-1041	Engage targets with the M-4 Carbine with the field protective mask
8154-CQB-1042	Engage multiple targets
8154-CQB-1043	Engage moving targets with the M-4 Carbine
8154-CQB-1044	Engage targets while on the move with the M-4 Carbine
8154-CQB-1045	Move to the objective
8154-CQB-1046	Enter the objective
8154-CQB-1047	Clear an enclosure
8154-CQB-1048	Clear a stairwell
8154-CQB-1049	Clear a hallway
8154-CQB-1050	Clear an elevator shaft
8154-CQB-1051	Clear a vehicle
8154-CQB-1052	Negotiate an improvised explosive device
8154-CQB-1053	Control an occupant

8154-CQB-1054	Evacuate an objective
8154-CQB-1055	Employ a flash bang diversionary device
8154-CQB-1056	Perform marshalling area procedures
8154-CQB-1057	Conduct operations with a security element
8154-CQB-1058	Conduct an assault rehearsal
8154-CQB-1059	Conduct a turnover
8154-CQB-1060	Coordinate designated marksman support
8154-CQB-1061	Qualify on the CQB pistol qualification course
8154-CQB-1062	Qualify on the CQB M-4 Carbine qualification course
MCSF-CMDC-1063	Employ radio communications
8152-DM-2001	Perform weapons handling procedures with the designated marksman rifle
8152-DM-2002	Perform preventive maintenance on the designated marksman rifle
8152-DM-2003	Maintain designated marksman optics
8152-DM-2004	Establish a final firing position
8152-DM-2005	Conduct observation of an area of responsibility
8152-DM-2006	Estimate the range to a target
8152-DM-2007	Generate a designated marksman range card
8152-DM-2008	Fill out the designated marksman data book
8152-DM-2009	Zero the designated marksman rifle
8152-DM-2010	Engage targets with the designated marksman rifle while wearing the field protective mask
8152-DM-2011	Engage multiple targets with the designated marksman rifle
8152-DM-2012	Engage moving targets with the designated marksman rifle
8152-DM-2013	Engage targets at an elevated or depressed angle with the designated marksman rifle
8152-DM-2014	Engage targets during low light and darkness with the designated marksman rifle
FAST-CQB-2015	Conduct weapons handling procedures with the Service pistol
FAST-CQB-2016	Conduct weapons handling procedures with the M-4 Carbine

FAST-CQB-2017	Zero The M-4 Carbine
FAST-CQB-2018	Engage stationary targets with the m-4 carbine/m-16 rifle
FAST-CQB-2019	Engage limited exposure targets with the M-4 Carbine/M-16 rifle
FAST-CQB-2020	Engage multiple targets with the m-4 carbine/m-16 rifle
FAST-CQB-2021	Engage moving targets with the M-4 Carbine/M-16 rifle
FAST-CQB-2022	Engage targets while on the move with the M-4 Carbine/M-16 rifle
FAST-CQB-2023	Move to the objective
FAST-CQB-2024	Enter an objective
FAST-CQB-2025	Clear an enclosure
FAST-CQB-2026	Clear a stairwell
FAST-CQB-2027	Clear a hallway
FAST-CQB-2028	Clear a vehicle
FAST-CQB-2029	Negotiate an improvised explosive device
FAST-CQB-2030	Control an occupant
FAST-CQB-2031	Evacuate an objective
FAST-CQB-2032	Employ a flash bang diversionary device
FAST-CQB-2033	Perform marshalling procedures
FAST-CQB-2034	Conduct an assault rehearsal
FAST-CQB-2035	Coordinate designated marksman support
FAST-CQB-2036	Isolate the objective
MCSF-CONV-2037	Conduct a forward 180-degree turn
MCSF-CONV-2038	Conduct a reverse 180-degree turn
MCSF-CONV-2039	Conduct vehicle barricade breaching
MCSF-CONV-2040	Perform proper offset in a motorcade formation
MCSF-NLW-2041	Employ non-lethal equipment
MCSF-NLW-2042	Employ non-lethal tactics
MCSF-PS-2043	Identify technology gear

4040. INDIVIDUAL TRAINING EVENTS**8152-AT-1001:** Identify anti-terrorism/force protection measures**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** This is an introduction to the DOD AT/FP Program (Level I). The Marine will identify the threat levels and how the force protection condition applies. The Marine will identify the four force protection conditions and DOD references.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, Combat Operations Center Watchstander, FAST Co, Company Commander, FAST Co, Company Commander, MCSF Co, Company Commander, PRP, MCSF Co, Company Gunnery Sergeant, FAST Co, Company Gunnery Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, Corpsman, FAST Co, Designated Marksman, Designated Marksman, PRP, MCSF Co, Executive Officer, FAST Co, Executive officer, PRP, MCSF Co, Executive/Guard Officer, MCSF Co, Fire Team Leader, MCSF Co, Fire Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, First Sergeant, FAST Co, First Sergeant, MCSF Co, Guard Chief, MCSF Co, Guard Chief, PRP, MCSF Co, Guard Officer, PRP, MCSF Co, Guard/Rifleman, PRP, MCSF Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Operations Chief, FAST Co, Operations Chief, PRP, MCSF Co, Operations Officer, PRP, MCSF Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, PRP, MCSF Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, Radio Chief, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, MCSF Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, Senior Corpsman (HM1), FAST Co, Sergeant Major, PRP, MCSF Co, Squad Leader, MCSF Co, Squad Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Supernumerary, FAST Co, Supernumerary, MCSF Co, Supernumerary, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL**CONDITION:** As a member of MCSFBn and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Identify, orally or in writing, the DOD threat levels and four force protection conditions and their application to MCSF operations in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify applicable references.
2. Demonstrate working knowledge of different threat levels.
3. Demonstrate working knowledge of force protection conditions.
4. Define terrorism.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-AT-1001  
8152-PS-1010

8152-AT-1002

8152-PS-1006

**REFERENCES:**



1. AR 525-13 Antiterrorism
2. DoD O-2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism Handbook
3. DoDD 2000.12 DOD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
4. DoDD 5210.41 Security Policy for Protection Nuclear Weapons
5. DoDI 2000.16 DoD Antiterrorism Standards
6. JP 3-07 Joint Doctrine for Military Operations Other Than War

---

**8152-AT-1002:** Identify terrorist organization, characteristics, and methodologies

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Terrorism is one of the greatest threats to national security and DOD installations worldwide. MCSF Marines must understand the organization, methodology, and impact of the various terrorist organizations that threaten national security.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of MCSFBn and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Identify orally or in writing, different terrorist organizations, how they organize to fight, and the tactics, techniques, and procedures they employ to accomplish their objectives in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify the 12 most common methods used in terrorist attacks.
2. Identify terrorist target selection criteria.
3. Identify characteristics of hard and soft targets.
4. Identify organizational structure of terrorist groups.
5. Identify common terrorist motivators.
6. Identify characteristics of terrorist operations.
7. Identify the phases of a terrorist attack.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoD O-2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism Handbook
2. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
3. DoDI 2000.16 DoD Antiterrorism Standards
4. MCRP 3-02 Combating Terrorism

---

**8152-PS-1003:** Conduct guard mount

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** In support of interior guard operations, the Corporal of the Guard (COG) conducts the guard mount to establish manning for specified posts and duties (e.g., machine gun posts, roving posts, DM, OP, and ECP). Guard mount is conducted by the COG, prior to post and relief on designated posts, to brief deadly force, rules of engagement, conduct personnel, weapons and equipment inspection, brief special and general orders, clearing barrel procedures, vital intelligence, communications procedures, weapons handling,

reaction procedures, location of friendly, enemy and suspected enemy positions and terrain.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF NCO assigned as COG, all T/E equipment, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Conduct guard mount to include, inspections, briefing of general and special orders, intelligence updates on friendly and enemy situations, and reaction drill procedures in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Brief Deadly Force
2. Brief Rules of Engagement
3. Inspect personnel, weapons and equipment
4. Brief general and special orders
5. Brief clearing barrel procedures
6. Brief vital intelligence
7. Set weapons condition
8. Process a detainee

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 22-6 Guard Duty
2. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
3. MCRP 3-01 Rifle Marksmanship
4. NAVMC 2691 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**8152-PS-1004:** Supervise posting of the guard as the Corporal of the Guard (COG)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Preparation of the guard force and proper posting and relief of the guard are the responsibility of the guard NCO. All MCSF members must understand the roles and responsibilities of the interior guard NCO while assigned to MCSF guard force.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSFBn Marine, assigned as the guard NCO of a MCSF guard section and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Properly post and relieve designated guard posts in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare guard roster.
2. Conduct guard mount.
3. Supervise weapon handling procedures and conditions.
4. Conduct sentry post and relief.
5. Maintenance of logbooks.
6. Conduct post inspection and inventory.
7. Maintain proper communication and support with higher.
8. Establish a security post

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 22-6 Guard Duty
2. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
3. MCRP 3-01 Rifle Marksmanship
4. NAVMC 2691 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**8152-PS-1005:** Establish an entry control point

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Entry control points are established to control the flow of vehicles and personnel into and out of a secured area. Guard personnel must have knowledge of the different responsibilities that exist at an Entry Control Point.

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSFBn Marine, as an armed member of MCSF Guardsman, all T/E equipment, standing any given post on an Entry Control Point, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Identify the roles and responsibilities of key individuals at an entry control point and properly search vehicles and personnel and allow no one without proper authorization to enter the secured area in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Physically identify personnel.
2. Control personnel.
3. Utilize proper search techniques.
4. Confiscate prohibited and contraband items.
5. Prepare a vehicle for search.
6. Search a vehicle.
7. Conduct security violation response procedures for the presence of contraband, IED's, and weapons.

8. Conduct proper EAL and badge procedures.
9. Conduct logbook and communication procedures.
10. Conduct operations as a cover man.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 5210.41 Security Policy for Protection Nuclear Weapons
2. FM 22-6 Guard Duty
3. NAVMC 2691 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
4. OPNAVINST 5530.14 Navy Physical Security

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**8152-PS-1006:** Conduct individual protective measures

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** MCSF members can observe or become victims of terrorism twenty-four hours a day, on or off-duty. Consideration must be given to this fact and appropriate measures used to deter terrorist operations at an individual level.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of MCSFBn, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate knowledge of individual protective measures such as identifying the threat, residential and hotel security, measures while traveling, measures while driving or moving as a pedestrian, all designed to mitigate terrorist threats in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate individual protective measures under common situations (routines, work, home, public places, CONUS/OCONUS.
2. Identify techniques for terrorist surveillance.
3. Explain the Code of Conduct and Guidance for peacetime security.
4. Identify actions taken the moment of capture.
5. Explain various stress management strategies.
6. Identify Stockholm Syndrome.
7. Identify actions to be taken during the aftermath of a hostage situation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. AR 525-13 Antiterrorism
2. DoD O-2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism Handbook
3. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
4. DoDI 2000.16 DoD Antiterrorism Standards

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**8152-PS-1007:** Conduct continuum of force techniques

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** MCSF members assigned to guard details must understand control techniques used to ensure compliance of personnel ranging from verbal instructions and warnings to deadly force.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of MCSF Guard, equipped with proper T/E assets, presented with a situation requiring the use of force, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Properly demonstrate the best control technique to use to mitigate the threat of an individual, based on the given scenario in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Properly identify the levels of the continuum of force.
2. Perform appropriate response procedures within the level of continuum of force.
3. Familiarization with proper references and SOP's.
4. Evaluate temper and intent of personnel.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 5210.41 Security Policy for Protection Nuclear Weapons
2. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
3. NAVMC 2691 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
4. SECNAVINST 5500.29 Use of Force by Personnel Engaged in Law Enforcement and Security duties

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**8152-PS-1008:** Apply deadly force

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** All members of MCSF, in the performance of their duties, may be involved in situations where the application of deadly force is required. Members must understand the rules and regulations concerning the use of deadly force and accurately interpret Rules of Engagement (ROE).

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of MCSF Guard, given required T/E assets, presented with a go/no-go scenario requiring the use of deadly force, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate knowledge of the justifications and circumstances surrounding the application of deadly force, based on published ROE, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate and identify the circumstances of deadly force.
2. Demonstrate and identify the justifications of deadly force.
3. Define and demonstrate the rules of engagement.
4. Define and demonstrate deadly force.
5. Identify the authority of the sentry as stated in Title 10 USC.
6. Identify the references governing the use of deadly force.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 5210.41 Security Policy for Protection Nuclear Weapons
2. FM 22-6 Guard Duty
3. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
4. NAVMC 2691 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
5. SECNAVINST 5500.29 Use of Force by Personnel Engaged in Law Enforcement and Security duties

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A011 Cartridge, 12 Gauge #00 Buckshot M16	5 each
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	5 each
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	10 each
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	10 each
AA29 Cartridge, 12 Gauge Non-Lethal Bean	5 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17711 Automated Multipurpose Training Range (MPTR)

---

**8152-PS-1009:** Augment a reaction force

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** The Reaction Force is a secondary security force that responds to any type incident that may occur beyond the capabilities of the guard mount, in accordance with the MCSF SOP. Marines assigned to MCSFCo's may be required to participate in combat operations as part of the Reaction Force. The Reaction Force must be able to conduct squad and Platoon level tactics so the Marines assigned must be proficient in fire team and squad tactics and

basic urban skills.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a MCSF Reaction Force, given proper T/E assets, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate proficiency with basic infantry and urban skills as an augmentee of the Reaction Force in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Participate as a member of a reaction force.
2. Demonstrate individual knowledge of movement techniques in accordance with CQB reference.
3. Demonstrate knowledge of reaction drills to incident alarms to CRBNE, IED's, bombs, and security violations.
4. Demonstrate knowledge of the Reaction Force Facility (RFF).
5. Demonstrate proper communications utilizing the SALUTE report.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 5210.41 Security Policy for Protection Nuclear Weapons
2. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
3. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
4. OPNAVINST 5530.14 Navy Physical Security
5. SECNAVINST 5500.29 Use of Force by Personnel Engaged in Law Enforcement and Security duties
6. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**8152-PS-1010:** Safeguard classified material

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** MCSF members, in the performance of their duties, may be required to safeguard various types of classified material or equipment. Proper identification, control, and security of classified materials is of vital importance to national security.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of MCSF Guard, given proper T/E assets, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Secure and safeguard any properly identified piece of classified material or equipment ensuring that the classified item(s) is turned over to

someone authorized to receipt for and store classified material or equipment in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify classification markings.
2. Identify OPSEC.
3. Demonstrate proper control of classified materials.

**REFERENCES:**

1. AR 380-5 Department of the Army Information Security Program
2. DoDD 5210.41 Security Policy for Protection Nuclear Weapons

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**8152-PS-1011:** Stand post

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** MCSF Marines will be required to stand guard at a variety of posts while posted as a sentry. These posts will include, ECP, Roving, OP/LP, and Reaction Force. MCSF Marines must be aware of the responsibilities of the sentry or personnel assigned to each of these posts.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of MCSF Guard, given appropriate T/E equipment, under any condition, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate a basic knowledge of all posts common to MCSF Guard in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Stand ECP.
2. Stand Roving guard.
3. Stand an OP/LP.
4. Stand React.
5. Conduct challenging procedures.
6. Conduct communication and logbook procedures.
7. Conduct post and relief.
8. Identify and demonstrate general and special orders.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 22-6 Guard Duty

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)



---

**8152-WPNS-1012:** Perform weapons handling procedures with the service pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Before firing any weapon, every member must demonstrate safe weapons handling procedures. The purpose behind safe weapons handling is to reduce the amount of danger associated with handling live weapons, as well as instill confidence in the shooter and provide a foundation from which all weapons handling will be conducted.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a service pistol with or without ammunition, while wearing a fighting load, a need to perform weapons handling, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Conduct safe weapons handling procedures, without violating the four firearm safety rules in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Don gear.
2. Handle the pistol safely.
3. Transport the pistol.
4. Withdraw the pistol from the holster.
5. Load the pistol.
6. Make the pistol ready.
7. Assume a carry.
8. Apply immediate/remedial action
9. Unload the pistol
10. Unload and show the pistol clear
11. Transfer the pistol from one Marine to another

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 1005A-10/1 Pistol, Semiautomatic, 9mm, M9
2. MCO 3574.2 Entry/Sustainment level marksmanship training for M-16 and M9
3. MCRP 3-01 Pistol Marksmanship

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A359 Cartridge, 9mm Dummy M917	6 each

---

**8152-WPNS-1013:** Perform preventive maintenance on the service pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Members must be able to maintain their own weapon. Different climates require different care and cleaning measures. Members must be able to disassemble, clean, inspect, lubricate, and reassemble the weapon, as well as perform a safety/ functions check with the weapon.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a service pistol, magazines, cleaning gear, lubricants, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Perform preventive maintenance on the service pistol in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the pistol safely
2. Place the pistol in condition 4
3. Disassemble the pistol and magazine
4. Inspect the pistol and magazine
5. Clean the pistol and magazine
6. Lubricate the pistol
7. Reassemble the pistol and magazine
8. Perform a user serviceability inspection

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1012

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1012

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 1005A-10/1 Pistol, Semiautomatic, 9mm, M9
2. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training Individual Small Arms
3. MCO 3574.2 Entry Level and Sustainment level Marksmanship Training with the M16A2 Service Rifle and M9 Service Pistol

---

**8152-WPNS-1014:** Engage a stationary target with the service pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Security Force members must maintain qualification with the service pistol utilizing the Security Force Qualification Course of fire. By performing this event the member is required to sustain his proficiency engaging stationary targets with the weapon system.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a Security Force member, given a service pistol, ammunition, while wearing a fighting load, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Obtain a qualifying score of 40 points or better, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the pistol
2. Load the pistol

3. Make the pistol ready
4. Assume a carry/transport
5. Present the pistol to the target
6. Assume a basic firing position in both the weaver and isosceles variations
7. Engage the target while applying the fundamentals of marksmanship and the techniques of fire
8. Assess the situation
9. Apply immediate/remedial action

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1012                      8152-WPNS-1013

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1012

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 1005A-10/1 Pistol, Semiautomatic, 9mm, M9
2. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training Individual Small Arms
3. MCRP 3-01 Pistol Marksmanship
4. MCSFTCO BSG WPNS DRILL GUIDE Marine Corps Security Force Training Company Basic Security Guard Course Weapons Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	364 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

**8152-WPNS-1015:** Engage a target from cover with the service pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Members must take into consideration the many aspects associated with utilizing cover. Members are required to select a position from which cover will be provided, and be able to apply techniques of fire from that covered position. This event must be completed before introducing multiple targets to the shooter.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a Security Force member, given a service pistol, ammunition, an object to provide cover, while wearing a fighting load, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage targets with applied marksmanship techniques, achieving 70% of impacts on target in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the pistol safely
2. Load the pistol

3. Make the pistol ready
4. Assume a carry/transport
5. Detect target
6. Present the pistol to the target while assuming a field firing position
7. Engage target while employing cover and applying the fundamentals of marksmanship and techniques of fire
8. Assess the situation
9. Apply immediate/remedial action

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1012                      8152-WPNS-1013                      8152-WPNS-1014

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1012                      8152-WPNS-1014

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training Individual Small Arms
2. MCRP 3-01 Pistol Marksmanship
3. MCSFTCO BSG WPNS Drill Guide Marine Corps Security Force Training Company Basic Security Guard Course Weapons Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	46 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

**8152-WPNS-1016:** Engage multiple targets with the service pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Members must be able to engage multiple threats effectively while applying marksmanship techniques, assess the effectiveness of the engagement, and be able to re-engage any remaining threats. In order to achieve proficiency at this level, members must first be proficient at engaging a stationary target.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a security force member, given a service pistol, ammunition, multiple targets, while wearing a fighting load, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage multiple targets with applied marksmanship techniques, achieving 60% of impacts on target in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the pistol safely
2. Load the pistol
3. Make the pistol ready

4. Assume a carry/transport
5. Detect targets
6. Prioritize targets
7. Present the pistol to the target while assuming a field firing position
8. Engage targets while employing multiple target engagement techniques and applying the fundamentals of marksmanship
9. Assess the situation
10. Apply immediate/remedial action

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1012                      8152-WPNS-1013                      8152-WPNS-1014

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1012                      8152-WPNS-1014

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training Individual Small Arms
2. MCRP 3-01 Pistol Marksmanship
3. MCSFTCO BSG WPNS Drill Guide Marine Corps Security Force Training Company Basic Security Guard Course Weapons Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	36 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

**8152-WPNS-1017:** Engage moving targets with the service pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** After demonstrating the ability to engage single, and multiple stationary targets, members must be able to engage a moving threat effectively while applying marksmanship techniques. Shooters must be able to determine the amount of lead and be able to apply point of aim to a moving target.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a Security Force member, given a service pistol, ammunition, moving targets, while wearing a fighting load, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage moving targets with applied marksmanship techniques in accordance with the Basic Security Guard performance evaluation checklist and marksmanship references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the pistol safely
2. Load the pistol

3. Make the pistol ready
4. Assume a carry/transport
5. Detect targets
6. Present the pistol to the target while assuming a field firing position
7. Determine a lead
8. Engage a target while employing moving target engagement techniques and applying the fundamentals of marksmanship
9. Assess the situation
10. Apply immediate/remedial action

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1012                      8152-WPNS-1013                      8152-WPNS-1014  
8152-WPNS-1016

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1012

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training Individual Small Arms

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	40 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

**8152-WPNS-1018:** Engage targets during low light and darkness with the service pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Members must be able to engage a threat effectively while applying marksmanship techniques during periods of low-light and darkness. Lighting sources such as backlight, code lighting, and flashlights are used to train members in acquiring their sights during periods of low visibility. The use of flashlight techniques will also be evaluated in this event.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a Security Force member, given a service pistol, ammunition, target, flashlight, while wearing a fighting load during low-light and darkness conditions, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage a target with applied marksmanship techniques achieving a qualifying score of 30 points or better in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the pistol safely
2. Load the pistol
3. Make the pistol ready

4. Assume a carry/transport with the pistol and flashlight
5. Detect the target with and without the use of a flashlight
6. Present the pistol to the target while assuming a field firing position
7. Engage targets while employing low light and darkness engagement techniques and applying the fundamentals of marksmanship
8. Assess the situation
9. Apply immediate/remedial action

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1012                      8152-WPNS-1013                      8152-WPNS-1014

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1012                      8152-WPNS-1014

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training Individual Small Arms
2. MCRP 3-01 Pistol Marksmanship
3. MCSFTCO BSG WPNS Drill Guide Marine Corps Security Force Training Company Basic Security Guard Course Weapons Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	60 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

**8152-WPNS-1019:** Perform weapons handling procedures with the service rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Before firing any weapon, every member must demonstrate safe weapons handling procedures. The purpose behind safe weapons handling is to reduce the amount of danger associated with handling live weapons, as well as instill confidence in the shooter and provide a foundation from which all weapons handling will be conducted.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a service rifle with or without ammunition, while wearing a fighting load, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Conduct safe weapons handling procedures, without violating the four firearm safety rules in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the rifle safely
2. Carry/transport the rifle
3. Load the rifle
4. Make the rifle ready
5. Apply remedial action

6. Unload the rifle
7. Unload and show the rifle clear
8. Transfer the rifle from one Marine to another

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-01 Rifle Marksmanship
2. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training Individual Small Arms

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A060 Cartridge, 5.56mm Dummy M199	6 each

---

**8152-WPNS-1020:** Engage short-range targets with the service rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** In order to prepare Security Force members for duty within the battalion, they must be skilled in the concepts of short-range rifle engagements assuming that many operations will be conducted in a MOUT environment. Members must be able to perform techniques such as shooting and moving, as well as transitioning from a primary to a secondary weapon.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a security force member, given a service rifle, ammunition, target, while wearing a fighting load, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage targets with applied marksmanship techniques, achieving a qualifying score of 70% or better, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the rifle safely
2. Load the rifle
3. Make the rifle ready
4. Assume a carry/transport
5. Present the rifle to the target while assuming a field firing position
6. Engage a target while employing cover and applying the fundamentals of marksmanship
7. Transition from the primary weapon to the secondary weapon
8. Reload the rifle
9. Assess the situation
10. Assess the situation

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1019

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-01 Rifle Marksmanship
2. MCSFTCO BSG WPNS Drill Guide Marine Corps Security Force Training Company Basic Security Guard Course Weapons Drill Guide



**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Pract	63 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	24 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**8152-WPNS-1021:** Perform weapons handling procedures with the service shotgun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Before firing any weapon, every member must demonstrate safe weapons handling abilities. The purpose behind safe weapons handling is to reduce the amount of danger associated with handling live weapons, as well as instill confidence in the shooter and provide a foundation from which all weapons handling will be conducted.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a service shotgun with or without ammunition, while wearing a fighting load, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Conduct safe weapons handling procedures, without violating the four firearm safety rules in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Characteristics of the M1014
2. Cycle of operation of the M1014
3. Nomenclature of the M1014
4. Major components of the M1014
5. Ammunition used with the M1014
6. Handle the shotgun safely
7. Transfer the shotgun from one Marine to another
8. Utilize the clearing barrel
9. Assume the carries
10. Assume the transports
11. Perform immediate/remedial action
12. React to an audible pop or reduced recoil

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-01 Rifle Marksmanship
2. TM 10698A-10/1 M1014, Joint Service Shotgun

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
AA55 Cartridge, 12 Gauge Dummy MK242 Mod	4 each

---

**8152-WPNS-1022:** Perform preventive maintenance on the service shotgun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Members must be able to maintain their own weapon. Different climates require different care and cleaning requirements. Members must be able to disassemble, clean, inspect, lubricate, and reassemble the weapon, as well as perform a safety/functions check with the weapon.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a service shotgun, cleaning gear, lubricants, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Perform preventative maintenance on the service shotgun in accordance with TM 10698A-10/1.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the shotgun safely
2. Place the shotgun in condition four
3. Disassemble the shotgun
4. Perform a user serviceability inspection
5. Clean and lubricate the shotgun
6. Reassemble the shotgun
7. Perform a safety functions check

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1021

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1021

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 10698A-10/1 M1014, Joint Service Shotgun

---

**8152-WPNS-1023:** Pattern the service shotgun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The service shotgun is capable of firing many different types of rounds, and no two barrels are exactly the same. This requires the member to pattern the weapon before use, allowing an offset aiming point to be utilized in order to move the strike of the rounds to center mast. The service shotgun should be patterned at 15 and 25 yards.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a service shotgun, required ammunition, target, while wearing a fighting load, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Pattern the service shotgun so that the center of the shot-group strikes center mast on the target in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the shotgun safely
2. Assume the standing position at the 15-yard/meter line
3. Load the shotgun with three shells of 00 buckshot
4. Make the shotgun ready
5. Fire three well-aimed shots while applying the fundamentals of marksmanship
6. Evaluate the shot pattern
7. Load one 00 buckshot for confirmation
8. Fire one well-aimed shot using an offset aiming point (if necessary)
9. Assume the standing position at the 25-yard/meter line
10. Load the shotgun with three shells of 00 buckshot
11. Make the shotgun ready
12. Fire three well-aimed shots while applying the fundamentals of marksmanship
13. Evaluate the shot pattern
14. Load one 00 buck shot for confirmation
15. Fire one well-aimed shot using an offset aiming point (if necessary)
16. Assume the standing position at the 25-yard/meter line
17. Load the shotgun with three slug rounds
18. Make the shotgun ready
19. Fire three well-aimed shots while applying the fundamentals of marksmanship
20. Evaluate the shot pattern
21. Load one slug round for confirmation
22. Fire one well-aimed shot using an offset aiming point (if necessary)

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1021                      8152-WPNS-1022

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1021

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-01 Rifle Marksmanship
2. TM 10698A-10/1 M1014, Joint Service Shotgun
3. MCSFTCO BSG WPNS Drill Guide Marine Corps Security Force Training Company  
Basic Security Guard Course Weapons Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A011 Cartridge, 12 Gauge #00 Buckshot M16	8 each
A023 Cartridge, 12 Gauge 1 Ounce Slug Com	4 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**8152-WPNS-1024:** Engage a target with the service shotgun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Security Force members must maintain qualification with the service shotgun utilizing the Security Force shotgun Qualification Course of fire. By performing this requirement the member is required to establish his proficiency with the weapon system.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a service shotgun, required ammunition, target, while wearing a fighting load, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Obtain a qualifying score of 63 points or better, in accordance with the Basic Security Guard Course Weapons Drill Guide.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the weapon safely
2. Perform a dry reload by bringing the hand over the top of the weapon
3. Perform a dry reload by bringing the hand underneath the weapon
4. Perform a dry reload by sending the bolt forward and placing the round in the magazine tube
5. Perform a condition one reload
6. Present the shotgun from the tactical carry
7. Present the shotgun from the alert
8. Present the shotgun from the ready
9. Present the shotgun from strong side muzzle up
10. Present the shotgun from weak side muzzle down
11. Present the shotgun from the three-point sling
12. Assume a standing position
13. Adjust the natural point of aim
14. Assume a kneeling position
15. Adjust the natural point of aim
16. Assume the prone position
17. Adjust the natural point of aim

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1021                      8152-WPNS-1022                      8152-WPNS-1023

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1021

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-01 Rifle Marksmanship
2. TM 10698A-10/1 M1014, Joint Service Shotgun
3. MCSFTCO BSG WPNS Drill Guide Marine Corps Security Force Training Company  
Basic Security Guard Course Weapons Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A011 Cartridge, 12 Gauge #00 Buckshot M16	44 each
A023 Cartridge, 12 Gauge 1 Ounce Slug Com	8 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**8152-WPNS-1025:** Engage multiple targets with the service shotgun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Members must be able to engage multiple threats effectively while applying marksmanship techniques, assessing the effectiveness of the engagement, and be able to reengage any remaining threats. In order to achieve this level, members must first be proficient at engaging a stationary target.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a Security Force member, given a service shotgun, ammunition, multiple targets, while wearing a fighting load, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Effectively engage multiple targets with applied marksmanship techniques, achieving 60% of impacts on target in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the weapon safely
2. Prioritize targets
3. Assume a field firing position
4. Engage multiple targets from the kneeling position
5. Engage multiple targets from the standing position
6. Engage multiple targets from the prone position
7. Considerations for firing from cover
8. Assume a supported kneeling position
9. Assume a supported standing position

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1021	8152-WPNS-1022	8152-WPNS-1023
8152-WPNS-1024		

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1021	8152-WPNS-1024
----------------	----------------

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-01 Rifle Marksmanship
2. TM 10698A-10/1 M1014, Joint Service Shotgun

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A011 Cartridge, 12 Gauge #00 Buckshot M16	12 each
A023 Cartridge, 12 Gauge 1 Ounce Slug Com	4 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**8152-WPNS-1026:** Engage moving targets with the service shotgun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** After demonstrating the ability to engage single, and multiple stationary targets, members must be able to engage a moving threat effectively while applying marksmanship techniques. Shooters must be able to determine the amount of lead and be able to apply point of aim to a moving target.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a Security Force member, given a service shotgun, ammunition, moving targets, while wearing a fighting load, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage moving targets with applied marksmanship techniques in accordance with the Basic Security Guard performance evaluation checklist.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the shotgun safely
2. Load the shotgun
3. Make the shotgun ready
4. Assume a carry/transport
5. Present the shotgun to the target while assuming a field firing position
6. Determine a lead
7. Engage the target while employing moving target engagement techniques and applying the fundamentals of marksmanship
8. Assess the situation while analyzing results and taking appropriate action
9. Apply immediate/remedial action

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1021	8152-WPNS-1022	8152-WPNS-1023
8152-WPNS-1024		

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1021

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-01 Rifle Marksmanship
2. TM 10698A-10/1 M1014, Joint Service Shotgun

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A011 Cartridge, 12 Gauge #00 Buckshot M16	10 each
A023 Cartridge, 12 Gauge 1 Ounce Slug Com	2 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**8152-WPNS-1027:** Engage targets during low light and darkness with the service shotgun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Members must be able to engage a threat effectively while applying marksmanship techniques during periods of low-light and darkness. Lighting sources such as backlight and code lighting are used to train members in acquiring their sights during periods of low visibility. Members are required to protect their night vision at all times.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a Security Force member, given a service shotgun, required ammunition, target, while wearing a fighting load during low-light and darkness conditions, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage a target with applied marksmanship techniques, achieving a qualifying score of 46 points or better in accordance with the Basic Security Guard Course Weapons Drill Guide.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the weapon safely
2. Utilize target detection techniques
3. Acquire targets during low light and darkness
4. Utilize the contrast of color technique for engagement at night
5. Acquire sight alignment and sight picture
6. Engage targets under artificial illumination

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1021	8152-WPNS-1022	8152-WPNS-1023
8152-WPNS-1024		

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-WPNS-1021	8152-WPNS-1024
----------------	----------------

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-01 Rifle Marksmanship
2. TM 10698A-10/1 M1014, Joint Service Shotgun

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A011 Cartridge, 12 Gauge #00 Buckshot M16	20 each
A023 Cartridge, 12 Gauge 1 Ounce Slug Com	4 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**8154-CQB-1028:** Perform weapons handling procedures with the service pistol and service rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in conducting safe manipulation of the service pistol so that he can effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment. During this event, individual Marines will be required to transition from their primary weapon to their secondary weapon and demonstrate weapons handling proficiency with both.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Safely control and confidently conduct weapons manipulations with the service pistol and service rifle, demonstrating knowledge of the four firearms safety rules in accordance with the CQB Weapons Handling checklist.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. State verbally the 4 safety rules
2. Demonstrate the 4 positions of carry
3. Demonstrate making the pistol ready for live fire
4. Demonstrate conducting a tactical reload
5. Demonstrate conducting a speed reload
6. Demonstrate unloading procedures
7. Define in writing a stoppage/malfunction
8. State in writing the 5 most common stoppages
9. Demonstrate clearing the 5 stoppages
10. Demonstrate firing with strong and weak hand
11. Demonstrate the standing position
12. Demonstrate the kneeling position
13. Demonstrate transitioning from the M-4 carbine to the service pistol

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 05538D/10012B-12/1 Operator's Manual, M16A2, A4 Rifle/M4A1 Carbine
2. TM 1005A-10/1 Pistol, Semiautomatic, 9mm, M9
3. MCO 1510.89 Depleted Uranium
4. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
5. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	56 each
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	20 per iteration (DEMO)
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	772 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	20 per iteration (DEMO)
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	10 each



**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**8154-CQB-1029:** Engage stationary targets with the service pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of stationary targets and apply fundamentals of marksmanship with the service pistol so that he can effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage stationary targets acquiring a minimum of 400 out of 500 points on the CQB Pistol Qualification Course in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate reactive shooting
2. Demonstrate a proper shooting stance
3. Demonstrate a pistol presentation
4. Demonstrate a proper shooting grip
5. Demonstrate working the slack out of the trigger
6. Demonstrate flash sight picture
7. Demonstrate compressed surprise break
8. Demonstrate proper muzzle control and follow through
9. Demonstrate the firing positions used in CQB
10. Demonstrate the three methods of shot delivery

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
2. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training Individual Small Arms
3. MCRP 3-01 Pistol Marksmanship
4. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
5. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	300 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	20 per iteration (DEMO)
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	30 each
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	13 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification  
Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**8154-CQB-1030:** Engage limited exposure targets with the service pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of limited exposure targets, and apply fundamentals of marksmanship in a condensed time frame with the service pistol so that he can effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage limited exposure targets with the service pistol acquiring a minimum of 400 out of 500 points on the CQB Pistol Qualification Course in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate engaging targets of limited exposure at various distances
2. Identify targets of limited exposure as threats or non-threats

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
2. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	300 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	20 per iteration (DEMO)
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

---

**8154-CQB-1031:** Engage targets in low light and darkness with the service pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of targets in a low light and no light environment with the service pistol so that he can effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment and put into a low light or no light environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage limited exposure targets in a specified amount of time with the service pistol, performing the CQB Pistol Night Qualification Course in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Perform weapons handling procedures during periods of low light/reduced visibility
2. Engage stationary targets during periods of low light/reduced visibility
3. Engage limited exposure targets during periods of low light/reduced visibility
4. Engage multiple targets during periods of low light/reduced visibility
5. Engage moving targets during periods of low light/reduced visibility
6. Engage stationary target while on the move during periods of low light/reduced visibility
7. Conduct speed reload during periods of low light/reduced visibility
8. Perform immediate action during periods of low light/reduced visibility
9. Demonstrate nighttime press check during periods of low light/reduced visibility
10. Engage using white light during periods of low light/reduced visibility

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 1005A-10/1 Pistol, Semiautomatic, 9mm, M9
2. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
3. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
4. MCO 1510.89 Depleted Uranium
5. MCRP 3-01 Pistol Marksmanship
6. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
7. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	100 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

---

**8154-CQB-1032:** Engage multiple targets with the service pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of multiple targets with the service pistol so that he can effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage multiple targets with the service pistol obtaining effective hits on all targets, in accordance with the CQB Drill Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate prioritizing targets
2. Demonstrate selecting threats
3. Demonstrate engaging threats using multiple target engaging techniques

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
2. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training Individual Small Arms
3. MCRP 3-01 Pistol Marksmanship
4. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
5. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	560 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	40 per iteration (DEMO)
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	10 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification  
Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**8154-CQB-1033:** Engage moving targets with the service pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of moving targets with the service pistol so that he can effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, through practical application and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage moving targets with the service pistol scoring effective hits on targets in accordance with the CQB Battle Drill Guide.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate the ability to determine lead while engaging a moving threat
2. Engage a moving threat from an unexpected direction
3. Determine method of engagement

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
2. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
3. MCRP 3-01 Pistol Marksmanship
4. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
5. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	50 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	20 per iteration (DEMO)
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	10 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

---

**8154-CQB-1034:** Engage targets while on the move with the service pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of targets while he is moving and apply fundamentals of marksmanship with the service pistol so that he can effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage targets while on the move with the service pistol acquiring a minimum of 400 out of 500 points on the CQB Pistol Qualification Course in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Engage targets while moving forward and laterally
2. Determine method of engagement

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
2. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
3. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	118 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	20 per iteration
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	10 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

---

**8154-CQB-1035:** Perform weapons handling procedures with the M-4 carbine

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in conducting safe manipulation of the M-4 carbine so that he can effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Safely control and confidently conduct weapons manipulations with the M-4 carbine observing the four firearm safety rules in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate the 4 positions of carry

2. Demonstrate the loading and unloading procedures
3. Demonstrate conducting a tactical reload
4. Demonstrate conducting immediate action
5. Define the 4 most common stoppages
6. Conduct a speed reload

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 05538D/10012B-12/1 Operator's Manual, M16A2, A4 Rifle/M4A1 Carbine
2. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
3. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
4. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	631 each
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	40 per iteration (DEMO)

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

**8154-CQB-1036:** Maintain the M-4 carbine

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in keeping his M-4 carbine operational and clean so it will be effective in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment and approved cleaning solvents and lubricants and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Clean and maintain the M-4 carbine so it will remain functional and reliable in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. State in writing the characteristics of the M-4 carbine
2. Perform a safety check
3. Disassemble the M-4 carbine
4. Clean the M-4 carbine
5. Reassemble the M-4 carbine
6. Perform a functions check

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 05538D/10012B-12/1 Operator's Manual, M16A2, A4 Rifle/M4A1 Carbine

---

**8154-CQB-1037:** Zero the M-4 carbine

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in zeroing the M-4 carbine so it will be accurate and effective in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Zero the M-4 carbine so point of aim will equal point of impact in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate making correct sight adjustments to the rear sight
2. Demonstrate making correct sight adjustments to the front sight

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 05538D/10012B-12/1 Operator's Manual, M16A2, A4 Rifle/M4A1 Carbine
2. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
3. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17520 Automated Field Fire (AFF) Range

---

**8154-CQB-1038:** Engage stationary targets with the M-4 carbine

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on the ability to meet the course standard in engagement of stationary targets and apply fundamentals of marksmanship with the M-4 carbine so that he can effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co



**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage stationary threats with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle acquiring a minimum of 400 out of 500 points on the CQB Rifle Qualification Course in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate a proper shooting stance
2. Demonstrate a proper M-4 presentation
3. Demonstrate a shooting grip
4. State in writing the meaning of flash sight picture
5. Demonstrate proper muzzle control and follow through
6. Demonstrate the three methods of shot delivery

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 05538D/10012B-12/1 Operator's Manual, M16A2, A4 Rifle/M4A1 Carbine
2. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
3. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
4. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	165 each
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	20 per iteration (DEMO)
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	20 each
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	10 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17520 Automated Field Fire (AFF) Range

---

**8154-CQB-1039:** Engage limited exposure targets with the M-4 carbine

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of limited exposure targets and apply fundamentals of marksmanship in a condensed amount of time with the M-4 carbine so that he can effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage limited exposure targets with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle acquiring a minimum of 400 out of 500 points on the CQB Rifle Qualification Course in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate engaging targets of limited exposure at various distances
2. Identify targets of limited exposure as threat or non-threat

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
2. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
3. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	165 each
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	20 each
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	5 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17520 Automated Field Fire (AFF) Range

---

**8154-CQB-1040:** Engage targets during low light and darkness with the M-4 carbine

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of targets in a low light and no light environment with the M-4 carbine so that he can effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment to include artificial illumination, operating in a low light or no light environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage limited exposure targets in a specified amount of time with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle accomplished by performing the CQB Rifle Night Qualification Course in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Acquired night vision in order to shoot the M-4 carbine
2. Demonstrate off center vision when aiming
3. Engage targets using white light

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 05538D/10012B-12/1 Operator's Manual, M16A2, A4 Rifle/M4A1 Carbine
2. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
3. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
4. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training Individual Small Arms
5. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
6. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
7. USMC, WEAPONS Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:****ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17520 Automated Field Fire (AFF) Range

---

**8154-CQB-1041:** Engage targets with the M-4 carbine while wearing the field protective mask

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of targets with the M-4 carbine while wearing a field protective mask so that he can effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment when faced with a NBC threat.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, through practical application and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage targets with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle while wearing a field protective mask acquiring effective hits on targets in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate donning the field protective mask
2. Demonstrate engaging targets while wearing the field protective mask

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
2. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
3. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training Individual Small Arms
4. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
5. USMC, Weapons Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:****ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	215 each
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	40 per iteration (DEMO)
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	20 each
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	10 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17520 Automated Field Fire (AFF) Range

---

**8154-CQB-1042:** Engage multiple targets with the M-4 carbine

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of multiple targets with the M-4 carbine so that he can effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage multiple targets with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle scoring effective hits on all targets in accordance with the CQB room-clearing checklist.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate target discrimination against multiple threats while stationary
2. Engage multiple threats with the M-4 carbine while stationary

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
2. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
3. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training Individual Small Arms
4. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 each
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	20 per iteration (DEMO)
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	20 each
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	10 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17520 Automated Field Fire (AFF) Range

---

**8154-CQB-1043:** Engage moving targets with the M-4 carbine

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of moving targets with the M-4 carbine so that he can effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, through practical application and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage moving targets with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle scoring effective hits on all targets in accordance with the CQB Battle Drill Guide.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate the ability to determine lead

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
2. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
3. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training Individual Small Arms
4. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
5. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
6. USMC, Weapons Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:****ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 each
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	20 per iteration (DEMO)
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	20 each
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	10 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

Facility Code 17520 Automated Field Fire (AFF) Range

---

**8154-CQB-1044:** Engage targets while on the move with the M-4 carbine

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of targets while he is moving and apply fundamentals of marksmanship with the M-4 carbine so that he can effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage threats while on the move with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle acquiring a minimum of 400 out of 500 points on the CQB rifle qualification course in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assume a firing position while on the move
2. Engage the target while moving forward and laterally
3. Determine method of engagement

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
2. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
3. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	154 each
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	20 per iteration (DEMO)
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	20 each
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	10 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

Facility Code 17520 Automated Field Fire (AFF) Range

---

**8154-CQB-1045:** Move to the objective

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in moving tactically to an objective while providing security, so that he can react quickly and effectively operate in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate an understanding of individual tactical movement to an objective, while providing security, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. State in writing the 9 elements of a phased movement
2. State in writing the actions to be taken during each of the 9 elements
3. State in writing the methods that an assault force can use to move to the insertion point

**REFERENCES:**

1. SECNAVINST 5500.29 Use of Force by Personnel Engaged in Law Enforcement and Security duties
2. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
3. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
4. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
5. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	28 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 each
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	10 total
G930 Grenade, Hand Smoke HC AN-M8	10 total

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**8154-CQB-1046:** Enter the objective

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to evacuate an objective

so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics involved and can operate successfully in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate ability to tactically evacuate an objective while maintaining all around security, in accordance with the MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate a team stack
2. Demonstrate checking the accessibility of the entry point
3. Demonstrate the passing of the ready signal
4. Define in writing the immediate area
5. Demonstrate the 5 steps to entering the enclosure
6. Demonstrate the illumination of the enclosure
7. List in writing the 2 methods of entry
8. List in writing the 3 entry techniques
9. Demonstrate a ballistic breach

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
2. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
3. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A024 Cartridge, 12 Gauge Door Breaching M	6 each
A024 Cartridge, 12 Gauge Door Breaching M	3 each
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	28 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 each
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	10 total
G930 Grenade, Hand Smoke HC AN-M8	10 total

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**8154-CQB-1047:** Clear an enclosure

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to clear an enclosure so



that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics involved, this way he can operate successfully in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate ability to tactically clear an enclosure, in accordance with the MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate the 2 man clearing techniques
2. Demonstrate the 3 man clearing techniques
3. Demonstrate the 4 man clearing techniques
4. Demonstrate marking a cleared enclosure
5. List in writing the 3 types of rooms
6. List in writing the 2 types of L-shapes
7. List in writing the 3 techniques for clearing an L-shaped enclosure
8. Demonstrate clearing an L-shaped enclosure
9. Demonstrate clearing a constricted space

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
3. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
4. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
5. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	25 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 each
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	10 total
G930 Grenade, Hand Smoke HC AN-M8	10 total

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**8154-CQB-1048:** Clear a stairwell

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to clear a

stairway/ladder well so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics, this way he can operate successfully in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate ability to tactically clear a stairwell/ladder well, in accordance with the MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate clearing a stairwell up
2. Demonstrate clearing a stairwell down

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
3. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
4. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
5. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	40 each
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	10 total
G930 Grenade, Hand Smoke HC AN-M8	10 total

---

**8154-CQB-1049:** Clear a hallway

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to clear a hallway so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics involved, this way he can operate successfully in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate ability to tactically clear a hallway, in accordance with the MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. State in writing the 3 elements for maintaining tactical movement in a hallway
2. Demonstrate the 3 formations for clearing a straight hallway
3. State in writing the techniques for clearing a T-shaped hallway
4. Demonstrate the clearing of an intersecting hallway

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. SECNAVINST 5500.29 Use of Force by Personnel Engaged in Law Enforcement and Security duties
3. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
4. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
5. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
6. USMC, Weapons Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	25 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 each
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	10 total
G930 Grenade, Hand Smoke HC AN-M8	10 total

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**8154-CQB-1050:** Clear an elevator shaft

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in clearing an elevator shaft so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics and can operate successfully in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application, given all necessary equipment and without

the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate the ability to tactically clear an elevator shaft, in accordance with the MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. State in writing the 7 steps to clear an elevator shaft

**REFERENCES:**

1. SECNAVINST 5500.29 Use of Force by Personnel Engaged in Law Enforcement and Security duties
2. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
3. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
4. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
5. USMC, Weapons Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A011 Cartridge, 12 Gauge #00 Buckshot M16	10 each
A023 Cartridge, 12 Gauge 1 Ounce Slug Com	10 each
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	20 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	20 each
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	10 total
G930 Grenade, Hand Smoke HC AN-M8	10 total

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** To properly conduct this event, a building with more than two floors and an elevator must be secured.

---

**8154-CQB-1051:** Clear a vehicle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to clear a vehicle so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics involved and can operate successfully in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate the ability to tactically clear a vehicle, in accordance with the MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. State in writing the actions for a sedan assault
2. State in writing the actions for a van assault
3. State in writing the actions for a bus assault

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
2. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
3. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**MATERIAL:** To properly conduct this event, a variety of vehicles must be secured for use as training aids. Do not use POV's due to liability issues if damage occurs to a vehicle during the conduct of training. Request GOV's for support. Vehicles requested should include: Bus, Van, P/U truck, sedan.

---

**8154-CQB-1052:** Negotiate an improvised explosive device (IED)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to negotiate an improvised explosive device so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics involved and can operate successfully in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate ability to tactically negotiate an improvised explosive device while maintaining all around security, in accordance with the MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. List in writing the 2 types of IED's
2. State in writing the proper marking procedures for an IED
3. State in writing the proper procedures for alerting team members of an IED

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
3. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
4. GAET
5. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

---

**8154-CQB-1053:** Control an occupant

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to control an occupant, verbally or physically, so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics involved and can operate successfully in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate ability to control an occupant, based on approved ROE, in accordance with the MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate controlling an occupant
2. List in writing 2 types of personnel searches
3. Demonstrate a hasty personnel search
4. Demonstrate a detailed personnel search

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
3. MCRP 3-2B Close Combat
5. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

---

**8154-CQB-1054:** Evacuate an objective

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to evacuate an objective so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics involved and can operate successfully in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate ability to tactically evacuate an objective while maintaining all around security, in accordance with the MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Give verbal situation report
2. State in writing the 4 types of evacuation
3. Define in writing a body bunker
4. State in writing the 2 types of corridors
5. Define in writing an exfiltration point
6. Demonstrate the evacuation of occupants

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
3. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
4. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**8154-CQB-1055:** Employ a flash bang diversionary device

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to employ a flash bang diversionary device so that he thoroughly understands the procedures involved and can achieve the results desired from use of the device.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate proper procedures for tactically employing a flash bang diversionary device to disorient the enemy in accordance with the MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Define in writing the purpose of a diversionary device
2. State in writing the 5 employment considerations of a diversionary device
3. State in writing the nomenclature of the MK-141 mod 0 diversionary device
4. Demonstrate employment of a diversionary device
5. State in writing the 4 characteristics of a diversionary device
6. State in writing the proper placement of a diversionary device
7. State in writing the protective gear worn when using a diversionary device
8. Demonstrate actions to be taken if diversionary device fails to ignite
9. Demonstrate the inspection of a diversionary device

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
3. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:****ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	6 per student
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	1 per iteration (DEMO)

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**8154-CQB-1056:** Perform marshalling procedures

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to perform marshaling area procedures (post operation procedures) so that he thoroughly comprehends what needs take place and the different responsibilities once the objective is secured and can operate successfully in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate ability to tactically perform marshalling procedures ensuring all personnel are properly accounted for in accordance with the MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. State in writing the definition of a marshaling area



2. State in writing the 5 pits inside the marshaling area and their purpose
3. Demonstrate the duties of the marshaling area Control Officer
4. Demonstrate the procedures for marking the marshaling area

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
3. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook
4. Ranger Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	56 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**8154-CQB-1057:** Conduct operations with a security element

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to conduct operations with a security element so he understands their role and how to utilize them and can operate successfully in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:**

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate the ability to conduct coordinated operations with a security element, in accordance with the MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify the definition of a security element
2. Identify in writing the purpose of a security element
3. Identify in writing the 7 security element roles
4. Identify in writing the 3 security element considerations

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. FMFM 3-1 Command and Staff Action
3. FMFM 7-32 Raid Operation
4. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations

5. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
6. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

DODIC

Quantity

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**8154-CQB-1058:** Conduct an assault rehearsal

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to conduct an assault rehearsal so that he is knowledgeable about the process and can execute when needed.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate the ability to organize and perform an assault rehearsal conducting all applicable immediate action drills, in accordance with the MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. List in writing the considerations for selecting a rehearsal site
2. List in writing the considerations when reconstructing the objective
3. List in writing the actions to be rehearsed prior to the assault

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
2. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
3. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook
4. Ranger Handbook

---

**8154-CQB-1059:** Conduct a turnover

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to conduct a turnover

with the guard force so he understands how the process takes place and can operate successfully in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate ability to conduct a turnover with a guard force ensuring that tactical awareness is maintained at all times during the turnover, in accordance with the MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Write a turnover plan
2. Brief a team turnover plan
3. Demonstrate executing a turnover plan

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
2. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
3. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**8154-CQB-1060:** Coordinate designated marksman support

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to coordinate support from a Designated Marksmen so he understands their role and can use them to be a force multiplier in a Close-Quarters Battle environment.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate ability to coordinate Designated Marksman support, in accordance with the MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Define in writing a Designated Marksman
2. List in writing the employment considerations for a Designated Marksman
3. List in writing the 3 employment options for a Designated Marksman
4. List in writing the procedures for command and control of a Designated Marksman

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM3-1B Sniping
2. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
3. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**8154-CQB-1061:** Qualify on the CQB pistol qualification course

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard on the CQB pistol qualification course with the service pistol, showing that he possesses the ability and skill to continue on to the tactics phase of the Close-Quarters Battle course.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment and ammunition and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Qualify on the Close-Quarters Battle pistol qualification course, which is accomplished by his ability to hit a minimum of 400 out of 500 points shooting a total of 50 rounds in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Perform weapons handling procedures with the service pistol
2. Engage stationary targets with the service pistol
3. Engage stationary targets with the service pistol while on the move
4. Engage limited exposure targets with the service pistol

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 1005A-10/1 Pistol, Semiautomatic, 9mm, M9
2. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
3. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual

4. MCO 1510.89 Depleted Uranium
5. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training Individual Small Arms
6. MCRP 3-01 Pistol Marksmanship
7. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
8. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	50 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

**8154-CQB-1062:** Qualify on the CQB M-4 carbine qualification course

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The CQB team member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard on the CQB rifle qualification course with the M-4 carbine, showing that he possesses the ability and skill to continue on to the tactics phase of the Close-Quarters Battle course.

**BILLETS:** CQB Team Member, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Cmdr, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Platoon Sergeant, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Section Leader, PRP, MCSF Co, RTT Team Leader, PRP, MCSF Co

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a CQB team member, in a Close-Quarters Battle environment, given all necessary equipment and ammunition and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Qualify on the Close-Quarters Battle rifle qualification course, which is accomplished by the ability to hit a minimum of 400 out of 500 points shooting a total of 50 rounds in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Engage stationary targets with the M-4 carbine
2. Engage limited exposure targets with the M-4 carbine
3. Engage stationary targets with the M-4 carbine while on the move
4. Perform weapons handling procedures with the M-4 carbine

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 05538D/10012B-12/1 Operator's Manual, M16A2, A4 Rifle/M4A1 Carbine
2. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
3. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
4. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training Individual Small Arms
5. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
6. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
7. USMC, Weapons Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	50 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17520 Automated Field Fire (AFF) Range

---

**8152-DM-2001:** Perform weapons handling procedures with the Designated Marksman Rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Designated Marksmen will utilize the Designated Marksman Rifle (DMR); therefore, before firing the weapon, every member must demonstrate safe weapons handling procedures. The purpose behind safe weapons handling is to reduce the amount of danger associated with handling live weapons, as well as instill confidence in the shooter and provide a foundation from which all weapons handling will be conducted.

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a DMR with or without ammunition, while wearing a fighting load, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate proper weapons handling procedures for the DMR and state the proper weapons conditions in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify DMR nomenclature/characteristics
2. Identify capabilities of the DMR
3. Identify the cycle of operation
4. Identify Designated Marksman equipment
5. Handle the weapon safely
6. Fill the magazine
7. Empty the magazine
8. Demonstrate the weapon transports
9. Load the rifle
10. Make the rifle ready to fire
11. Unload the rifle
12. Make the rifle safe
13. Apply remedial action

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 02648C-10/1 Designated Marksman Rifle

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A135 Cartridge, 7.62mm Dummy M63	10 each

---

**8152-DM-2002:** Perform preventive maintenance on the Designated Marksman Rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Members must maintain their own weapon. Different climates require different care and cleaning procedures. Members must disassemble, clean, inspect, lubricate, and reassemble the weapon, as well as perform a safety/functions check with the weapon.

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a DMR, cleaning gear, lubricants, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate proper weapons cleaning procedures in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the weapon safely
2. Place the weapon in condition four
3. Disassemble the rifle
4. Clean the rifle
5. Lubricate the rifle
6. Reassemble the rifle
7. Perform a safety/function check
8. Make entries in the gun book

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-DM-2001

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 02648C-10/1 Designated Marksman Rifle

---

**8152-DM-2003:** Maintain Designated Marksman optics

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The majority of the Designated Marksman's (DM's) mission is conducting observation. In order to conduct this mission, the Designated Marksman (DM) must be able to utilize his optics. This requires that members have the knowledge and skills needed to effectively maintain the optics utilized by the DM.

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT





3. MCSFBN DM DRILL GUIDE Marine Corps Security Force Battalion Designated Marksman Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	323 per iteration
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	7 each
L495 Flare, Surface Trip M49 Series	36 per iteration

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**8152-DM-2005:** Conduct observation on an area of responsibility

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The majority of a DM's mission is conducting observation. This requires a member to prepare his equipment for the mission, occupy a post to best support the mission, locate a hostile target, report information back to higher headquarters, and maintain constant observation on the area.

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a MCSF DM with appropriate T/O weapon, all required gear, given an area to observe, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Conduct observation, record information in appropriate reports, and communicate reports to higher headquarters in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Organize designated marksman equipment
2. Occupy observation position
3. Identify environment of a target
4. Locate hostile targets
5. Report hostile targets to the command operation center
6. Maintain observation

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-DM-2001                      8152-DM-2004

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM3-1 Sniping
2. MCSFBN DM Drill Guide Marine Corps Security Force Battalion Designated Marksman Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	75 per iteration
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	8 per iteration

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**8152-DM-2006:** Estimate the range to a target

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** To successfully accomplish their mission as a DM, members must estimate the range to a target. These estimations are vital in the reporting of information to higher headquarters, as well as in the calculation of well-aimed shots.

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a DMR, all required gear, multiple targets, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Within 10% of the actual distance in accordance with the references.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-DM-2003

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-15.3 Sniping
2. FMFM3-1 Sniping
3. MCSFBN DM Drill Guide Marine Corps Security Force Battalion Designated Marksman Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**8152-DM-2007:** Generate a Designated Marksman range card

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Member's observation skills require the use of range cards in order to assist in reporting, recording, and turnover of a firing position. A DM must generate a position range card, personal range card, and a range card for higher headquarters.

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a DMR, all required equipment, an area of observation, from an appropriate firing or observation position, and with the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Generate a range card with all the required data in accordance with the references.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-DM-2005                      8152-DM-2006

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-15.3 Sniping
2. FMFM3-1 Sniping
3. MCSFBN DM Drill Guide Marine Corps Security Force Battalion Designated Marksman Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

---

**8152-DM-2008:** Record data in the Designated Marksman data book

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Members are responsible for accurate information and shot placement. The recording of information in the data book is an essential task required of a DM. The use of a data book by a DM is continuous.

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a DMR, data book, all required equipment, the requirement to record information, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Enter all required data in the DM data book in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Record information
2. Analyze

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 02648C-10/1 Designated Marksman Rifle

---

**8152-DM-2009:** Zero the Designated Marksman rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Zeroing the DMR requires the member to have an understanding of the fundamentals of marksmanship and make sight adjustments with the scope.

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a DMR, all required equipment, ammunition, a target and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To within a three-inch shot circle at 100 yards, a six inch shot group at 200 yards, and a nine-inch shot group at 300 yards in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Aiming
2. Breath control
3. Trigger control
4. Follow through/recovery
5. Internal ballistics
6. External ballistics
7. Terminal ballistics
8. Compensate for the effects of weather
9. Compensate for the effects of temperature
10. Handle the weapon safely
11. Prepare the weapon for firing
12. Focus the scope
13. Adjust for parallax
14. Engage target at a know distance
15. Make scope adjustments
16. Float the scope

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-DM-2001

8152-DM-2008

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 23-23 Antipersonnel Mine M18A1 and M18 Claymore
2. TM 02648C-10/1 Designated Marksman Rifle
3. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
4. MCSFBN DM DRILL GUIDE Marine Corps Security Force Battalion Designated Marksman Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	24 per iteration (Demo)
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	79 each
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	8 per iteration

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**8152-DM-2010:** Engage targets with the Designated Marksman rifle while wearing the field protective mask

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Members are required to operate in nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions. Wearing the field protective mask requires additional adjustments to the weapon in order to effectively engage a target.

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a DMR, ammunition, target, while wearing a gas mask and fighting load, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Don the Field Protective Mask within the required time limit and effectively engage targets in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the weapon safely
2. Prepare for firing
3. Don and clear the field protective mask
4. Detect the target
5. Present the rifle to the target while assuming a firing position
6. Engage targets based on observers commands
7. Assess the situation

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-DM-2001                      8152-DM-2009

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 21-18 Foot Marches
2. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
3. MCO 1510.89a ITS System for MCCS
4. MCO 3574.2 Entry Level and Sustainment level Marksmanship Training with the M16A2 Service Rifle and M9 Service Pistol
5. MCSFBN DM Drill Guide Marine Corps Security Force Battalion Designated Marksman Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	60 per iteration
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	3 each
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	18 per iteration (Demo)
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	75 each
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	7 per iteration
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	7 per iteration

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**8152-DM-2011:** Engage multiple targets with the Designated Marksman rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Members must have the proficiency to engage multiple threats with the DMR, assessing the effectiveness of an engagement, and be able to re-engage any remaining threats.

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a DMR, ammunition, multiple targets, while wearing a fighting load, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Sustaining effective hits on all targets in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the weapon safely
2. Prepare for firing
3. Detect targets
4. Prioritize targets
5. Engage targets
6. Assess the situation

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-DM-2001                      8152-DM-2009

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 20-3 Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys
2. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
3. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
4. MCO 3574.2 Entry Level and Sustainment level Marksmanship Training with the M16A2 Service Rifle and M9 Service Pistol
5. MCSFBN DM Drill Guide Marine Corps Security Force Battalion Designated Marksman Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A135 Cartridge, 7.62mm Dummy M63	10 each
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	36 per iteration (Demo)
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	71 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**8152-DM-2012:** Engage moving targets with the Designated Marksman rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Members must effectively engage a moving threat while applying marksmanship techniques. Shooters must develop the proficiency to determine the amount of lead and be able to apply lead to a moving target.

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a DMR, ammunition, moving targets, while wearing a fighting load, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Sustaining effective hits on all targets in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the weapon safely
2. Detect targets
3. Determine a lead
4. Engage a target
5. Assess the situation

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-DM-2001

8152-DM-2009

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
2. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
3. MCO 3574.2J w/ Ch 1 Entry Level and Sustainment level Marksmanship Training with the M16A2 Service Rifle and M9 Service Pistol
4. MCSFBN DM Drill Guide Marine Corps Security Force Battalion Designated Marksman Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	60 per iteration
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	36 per iteration (Demo)
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	77 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**8152-DM-2013:** Engage targets at an elevated or depressed angle with the Designated Marksman rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Engaging targets at an elevated or depressed angle require adjustments in firing data calculations. Members must calculate elevated or

depressed angles, and apply this data to scope manipulations in order to make accurate shots.

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a DMR, ammunition, targets, an elevated platform, while wearing a fighting load, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Applying the appropriate adjustments in firing data calculations to effectively engage targets at an elevated or depressed angle in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the weapon safely
2. Prepare the weapon for firing
3. Calculate the cosine method
4. Make sight adjustments
5. Engage targets based on observers command

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-DM-2001                      8152-DM-2009

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-15.3 Sniping
2. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
3. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
4. FMFM3-1 Sniping
5. MCSFBN DM Drill Guide Marine Corps Security Force Battalion Designated Marksman Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	60 per iteration
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	18 per iteration (Demo)
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	78 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range  
Facility Code 17311 Range Support Building

---

**8152-DM-2014:** Engage targets during low light and darkness with the Designated Marksman rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Members must engage threats effectively while applying marksmanship techniques in low light and darkness. A DM must develop the proficiency to acquire their sights during periods of low visibility.



**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a DMR, ammunition, targets, while wearing a fighting load, during the hours of darkness, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Engage targets during low light and darkness acquiring effective hits on each target in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the weapon safely
2. Acquire night vision
3. Prepare for firing
4. Detect the target
5. Engage targets based on observers commands
6. Assess the situation

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

8152-DM-2001

8152-DM-2009

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
2. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
3. FMFM 3-1 Sniping
4. MCSFBN DM Drill Guide Marine Corps Security Force Battalion Designated Marksman Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	65 per iteration
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	2 each
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	30 per iteration (Demo)
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	70 each
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	10 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**FAST-CQB-2015:** Conduct weapons handling procedures with the service pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in conducting safe manipulation of the service pistol so that he can effectively operate in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard,

FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Safely control and confidently conduct weapons manipulations with the service pistol in accordance with the AUC Weapons Handling Checklist.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. State the five safety rules
2. Demonstrate the four positions of carry
3. Demonstrate making the pistol ready for live fire
4. Demonstrate a tactical reload
5. Demonstrate a speed reload
6. Demonstrate unloading procedures
7. Demonstrate the difference between a malfunction and a stoppage
8. State the five most common stoppages
9. Demonstrate clearing the five stoppages
10. Demonstrate one handed firing with dominant and weak hand
11. Demonstrate the standing position
12. Demonstrate the kneeling position
13. Demonstrate transitioning from the M-4 to the pistol

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 1005A-10/1 Pistol, Semiautomatic, 9mm, M9
2. MCO 1510.89a ITS System for MCCA
3. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
4. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	772 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	20 per iteration (Demo)
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	10 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**FAST-CQB-2016:** Conduct weapons handling procedures with the M-4 carbine

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in conducting safe manipulation of the M-4 carbine so he can effectively operate in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide,

FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Safely control and confidently conduct weapons manipulations with the M-4 carbine in accordance with the AUC weapons handling checklist.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate the four positions of carry for the M-4
2. Demonstrate loading and unloading procedures for the M-4
3. Demonstrate a tactical reload with the M-4
4. Demonstrate immediate action for the M-4
5. State the five most common stoppages for the M-4
6. Demonstrate a speed reload with the M-4
7. Demonstrate the standing position with the M-4
8. Demonstrate the kneeling position with the M-4
9. Demonstrate the barricade shooting positions with the M-4

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 05538D/10012B-12/1 Operator's Manual, M16A2, A4 Rifle/M4A1 Carbine
2. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
3. MCO 1510.89a ITS System for MCCA
4. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
5. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
6. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	631 each
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	40 per iteration (Demo)

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**FAST-CQB-2017:** Zero the M-4 carbine

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in zeroing his M-4 carbine so it will be accurate and effective in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Zero the M-4 carbine so point of aim will equal point of impact in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate making the correct sight adjustments to the M-4 carbine rear sight
2. Demonstrate making the correct sight adjustments to the M-4 carbine front sight

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 05538D/10012B-12/1 Operator's Manual, M16A2, A4 Rifle/M4A1 Carbine
2. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
3. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	20 per drill

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**FAST-CQB-2018:** Engage stationary targets with the M-4 carbine/M-16 service rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of stationary targets and apply fundamentals of marksmanship with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle so that he can effectively eliminate all threats and operate in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Engage stationary targets with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle

acquiring a minimum of 400 out of 500 points on the AUC rifle qualification course.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate the standing position
2. Demonstrate the M-4/M-16 rifle presentation
3. Demonstrate a shooting grip
4. Demonstrate flash sight picture
5. Demonstrate proper muzzle control and follow through
6. Demonstrate the three methods of shot delivery

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 05538D/10012B-12/1 Operator's Manual, M16A2, A4 Rifle/M4A1 Carbine
2. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
3. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
4. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	165 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**FAST-CQB-2019:** Engage limited exposure targets with the M-4 carbine/M-16 service rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of limited exposure targets and apply fundamentals of marksmanship in a condensed amount of time with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle so that he can effectively eliminate all threats and operate in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Engage limited exposure targets with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle acquiring a minimum of 400 out of 500 points on the AUC rifle qualification course.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Engage targets of limited exposure at various distances
2. Identify targets of limited exposure as threats or non-threats

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. TM 05538D/10012B-12/1 Operator's Manual, M16A2, A4 Rifle/M4A1 Carbine
3. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
4. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
5. MCO 3574.2 Entry/Sustainment level marksmanship training for M-16 and M9
6. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
7. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
8. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	165 each
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	20 each
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	5 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

**FAST-CQB-2020:** Engage multiple targets with the M-4 carbine/M-16 service rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of multiple targets with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle so that he can effectively eliminate all threats and operate in a Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Engage multiple targets with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle scoring effective hits on all targets in accordance with the AUC room-clearing checklist.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate target discrimination against multiple threats while stationary
2. Engage multiple threat targets while stationary

**REFERENCES :**

1. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
2. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
3. MCO 3574.2 Entry/Sustainment level marksmanship training for M-16 and M9
4. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
5. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS :****ORDNANCE :**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 each
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	20 per iteration (Demo)
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	20 each
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	10 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA :**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**FAST-CQB-2021 :** Engage moving targets with the M-4 carbine/M-16 service rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED :** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL :** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION :** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of moving targets with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle so that he can effectively eliminate all threats and operate in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS :** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES :** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING :**

**CONDITION :** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD :** Engage moving targets with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle, scoring effective hits on all targets in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS :**

1. Demonstrate the ability to determine lead

**REFERENCES :**

1. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
2. FMFM 0-9 Field Firing Manual
3. MCO 3574.2 Entry/Sustainment level marksmanship training for M-16 and M9
4. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
5. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills
6. USMC, Weapons Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 each
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	20 per iteration (Demo)
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	20 each
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	10 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**FAST-CQB-2022:** Engage targets while on the move with the M-4 carbine/M-16 service rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in engagement of targets while he is moving and apply fundamentals of marksmanship with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle so that he can effectively eliminate all threats and operate in a Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Engage targets while on the move with the M-4 carbine/M-16 rifle acquiring a minimum of 400 out of 500 points on the AUC rifle qualification course.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate a firing position while on the move
2. Engage targets while on the move forward and laterally
3. Determine method of engagement

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 0-8 Basic Marksmanship
2. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
3. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
--------------	-----------------



A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	154 each
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	100 per drill
A065 Cartridge, 5.56mm Plastic Ball Prac	100 per drill
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	20 each

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

**FAST-CQB-2023:** Move to the objective

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in tactical movement to an objective while providing all around security so that he can effectively operate in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, utilizing practical application and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate the methods of conducting tactical movement to an objective while providing all around security, in accordance with the MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate the elements of a phased movement
2. Demonstrate the methods that an assault force can use to move to the insertion point

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. SECNAVINST 5500.29 Use of Force by Personnel Engaged in Law Enforcement and Security duties
3. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
4. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
5. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
6. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

DODIC

Quantity

A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	28 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 each
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	10 total
G930 Grenade, Hand Smoke HC AN-M8	10 total

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**FAST-CQB-2024:** Enter an objective

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in entering an objective so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics involved and can operate successfully in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, utilizing practical application live fire and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate the method and procedures used to tactically enter an objective in accordance with the MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate a team stack
2. Demonstrate checking the accessibility of the entry point
3. Demonstrate passing the ready signal
4. Demonstrate the five steps of entering an enclosure
5. Demonstrate the illumination of an enclosure
6. Demonstrate the two methods of entry
7. Demonstrate the entry techniques
8. Demonstrate a ballistic breach

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
2. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
3. MCSF BN Close Quarters Battle Drills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A024 Cartridge, 12 Gauge Door Breaching M	6 each

A024 Cartridge, 12 Gauge Door Breaching M	3 each
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	28 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 each
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	10 total
G930 Grenade, Hand Smoke HC AN-M8	10 total

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

**FAST-CQB-2025:** Clear an enclosure

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to clear an enclosure so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics involved and can operate successfully in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate the method and procedures used to tactically clear an enclosure, in accordance with the MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate the two man clearing technique
2. Demonstrate the three man clearing technique
3. Demonstrate the four man clearing technique
4. Demonstrate marking a cleared enclosure
5. Demonstrate clearing an L-shaped enclosure
6. Demonstrate clearing a constricted space

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
3. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
4. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
5. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	28 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 each
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	10 total
G930 Grenade, Hand Smoke HC AN-M8	10 total

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

**FAST-CQB-2026:** Clear a stairwell

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to clear a stairway/ladder well so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics involved and can operate successfully in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate the method and procedures used to tactically clear a stairwell/ladder well, in accordance with the MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate clearing a stairwell up
2. Demonstrate clearing a stairwell down

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
3. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
4. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
5. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	25 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 each
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	10 total

G930 Grenade, Hand Smoke HC AN-M8

10 total

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**FAST-CQB-2027:** Clear a hallway

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to clear a hallway so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics involved and can operate successfully in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simulation training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate the method and procedures used to tactically clear a hallway, in accordance with the MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate one of the three formations for clearing a straight hallway
2. Demonstrate the techniques for clearing a T-shaped hallway
3. Demonstrate the clearing of an intersecting hallway

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. SECNAVINST 5500.29 Use of Force by Personnel Engaged in Law Enforcement and Security duties
3. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
4. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
5. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
6. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook
7. USMC, Weapons Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	25 each
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 each
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	10 total

G930 Grenade, Hand Smoke HC AN-M8

10 total

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**FAST-CQB-2028:** Clear a vehicle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to clear a vehicle so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics and can operate successfully in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, utilizing practical application, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate the proper procedures used to tactically clear a vehicle, in accordance with the MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate clearing actions for a sedan assault
2. Demonstrate the clearing actions for a van assault

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
2. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
3. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

---

**FAST-CQB-2029:** Negotiate an improvised explosive device (IED)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to negotiate an improvised explosive device so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics involved and can operate successfully in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide,

FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate procedures used to tactically negotiate an improvised explosive device, maintaining all around security, in accordance with the MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate the marking procedures for an IED
2. Demonstrate the procedures for alerting team members of an IED

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
3. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
4. GAET
5. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook

---

**FAST-CQB-2030:** Control an occupant

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to control an occupant, verbally or physically, so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics involved and can operate successfully in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate procedures used to tactically control an occupant, within the constraints of published ROE, in accordance with the MCSF BN AUC

Student Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate controlling an occupant
2. Demonstrate a hasty personnel search
3. Demonstrate a detailed personnel search

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
3. MCRP 3-2B Close Combat
4. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook

---

**FAST-CQB-2031:** Evacuate an objective

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to evacuate an objective so that he thoroughly comprehends the tactics involved and can operate successfully in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate procedures used to tactically evacuate an objective, while maintaining security and the ability to continue the mission, in accordance with the MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Give verbal situation report
2. Demonstrate one of the two types of corridors
3. Demonstrate evacuation of occupants

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
3. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
4. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**



**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	20 each
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	10 total
G930 Grenade, Hand Smoke HC AN-M8	10 total

---

**FAST-CQB-2032:** Employ a flash bang diversionary device

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to employ a flash bang diversionary device so that he thoroughly comprehends the procedures involved, and can operate successfully in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate procedures used to tactically employ a flash bang diversionary device to disorient the enemy, in accordance with the MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. State the purpose of a flash bang diversionary device
2. State the five employment considerations of a flash bang diversionary device
3. State the nomenclature for a MK141 MOD 0 diversionary device
4. Demonstrate employment of the flash bang diversionary device
5. Demonstrate the proper placement of the flash bang diversionary device
6. Demonstrate actions to be taken if the flash bang diversionary device fails to ignite
7. Demonstrate the inspection of a flash bang diversionary device

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
3. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
4. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	6 each
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	1 per iteration (Demo)

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**FAST-CQB-2033:** Perform marshalling procedures

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to perform marshaling area procedures (post operation procedures) so that he thoroughly comprehends what needs take place and the different responsibilities once the objective is secured, and can operate successfully in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate procedures used to tactically perform marshalling procedures, maintaining accurate accounting for all personnel, in accordance with the MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate establishing marshalling area
2. Demonstrate the duties of the marshalling area control officer (MACO)
3. Demonstrate the procedures for marking the marshalling area

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
3. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook
4. Ranger Handbook

---

**FAST-CQB-2034:** Conduct an assault rehearsal

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to conduct an assault rehearsal so that he is knowledgeable about the process and can execute when required.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, utilizing practical application, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate procedures used to conduct an assault rehearsal, to include immediate action drills, in accordance with the MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate selecting a rehearsal site
2. Demonstrate reconstructing the objective

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 8-1 Special Operations
2. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
3. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook
4. Ranger Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	40 each
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	10 total
G930 Grenade, Hand Smoke HC AN-M8	10 total

---

**FAST-CQB-2035:** Coordinate Designated Marksman support

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to coordinate support from the Designated Marksmen, so he understands their role as a force multiplier and can utilize them in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate procedures used to coordinate Designated Marksman support, in accordance with the MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate employing designated marksman
2. Demonstrate command and control of a designated marksman

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM3-1B Sniping
2. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
3. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

---

**FAST-CQB-2036:** Isolate the objective

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The FAST platoon member is evaluated on his ability to meet the course standard in the understanding of and ability to isolate the objective so he understands the concept of how to lock down an objective and can operate successfully in an Advanced Urban Combat environment.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a FAST platoon member, in an Advanced Urban Combat environment, utilizing practical application, live fire, and force-on-force simunition training, given all necessary equipment and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate tactics and procedures used to isolate an objective, in accordance with the MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate deploying a perimeter security force
2. Demonstrate employing a blocking position
3. Demonstrate deploying a containment force

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 90-10-1 An Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas
2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Squad
3. MCSF BN AUC Student Handbook
4. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

---

**MCSF-CONV-2037:** Conduct a forward 180-degree turn

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** A forward 180-degree turn is a turn that is conducted while the vehicle is moving forward at a moderate speed. This is not a U-turn. The purpose of the 180-degree turn is to get the vehicle away from the threat as quickly and safely as possible, minimizing its exposure as a potential target.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit conducting convoy operations, required T/E equipment, under any condition and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Individual drivers must successfully turn and evade/avoid the threat in accordance with the reference.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Check your speed. On dry asphalt 30-35 mph; wet pavement 20-25 mph.
2. If traveling over/under desired speed, brake/accelerate to appropriate speed.
3. Lock the emergency brake causing the rear tires to slide.
4. Turn the steering wheel no more than 1/4 turn towards the direction you want the vehicle to go.
5. When the vehicle has rotated 180 degrees, release the parking brake and accelerate.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 4-11.3 Convoy Operations Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17906 Wheeled Vehicle Drivers Course

---

**MCSF-CONV-2038:** Conduct a reverse 180-degree turn

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** A reverse 180-degree turn is a turn that is conducted while the vehicle is moving in reverse at a moderate speed. The vehicle will come to a complete stop. The driver will shift the vehicle in reverse, then execute a 180-degree turn. This is not a U-turn. The purpose of the reverse 180-degree turn is to get the vehicle away from the threat as quickly and safely as possible, minimizing its exposure as a potential target.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit conducting convoy operations, required T/E equipment, under any condition and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Individuals drivers must stop the vehicle, shift in reverse, successfully turn and evade/avoid the threat in accordance with the reference.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Starting from a dead stop, slowly apply accelerator. Once moving, fully apply accelerator.
2. Begin a four second count to ensure proper speed and momentum.
3. Once proper speed and momentum are attained, lift foot off of accelerator.
4. Turn the steering wheel as far as it will turn in the direction you want the vehicle to go.
5. When the vehicle has rotated 180 degrees, shift the vehicle into forward gear, shift the vehicle into forward gear in an automatic transmission or 2d gear in a standard transmission vehicle.
6. Accelerate away.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 4-11.3 Convoy Operations Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17906 Wheeled Vehicle Drivers Course

---

**MCSF-CONV-2039:** Conduct vehicular barricade breaching

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Vehicular barricade breaching is intended for the convoy to negotiate an obstacle by pushing the obstacle or barricading vehicle out of the way with the motorcade.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co,

Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit conducting convoy operations, required T/E equipment, under any condition and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Drivers will successfully breach the barricade pushing the barricade or vehicles out of the way, minimizing damage to the vehicle if possible, and continue movement in accordance with the reference.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Adjust the speed of your vehicle to 18-22 mph, using threshold braking to feint a stop.
2. Aim a corner of your vehicle towards the appropriate end of the barricade.
3. Accelerate through the barricade without touching the brakes.
4. Accelerate away once the vehicle has cleared the barricade.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 4-11.3 Convoy Operations Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17906 Wheeled Vehicle Drivers Course

---

**MCSF-CONV-2040:** Perform proper offset in a motorcade formation

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Offset is both linear and lateral separation from the vehicle in front of you. Offset is used to provide dispersion and minimize the number of vehicles exposed in a danger area or turn.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit conducting convoy operations, required T/E equipment, under any condition and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Successfully establish linear and lateral separation from the vehicle in front of you based on speed and the extent of the danger area in accordance with the references.

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17906 Wheeled Vehicle Drivers Course

---

**MCSF-NLW-2041:** Employ non-lethal equipment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Designated MCSF Marines will demonstrate proper use of non-lethal equipment to be used while performing non-lethal operations.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** As a member of MCSF, given required T/E, non-lethal equipment, under any condition and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Identify and demonstrate proper use of non-lethal equipment, in accordance with the reference.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 5210.41 Security Policy for Protection Nuclear Weapons
2. MCO 5500.6 Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force
3. OPNAVINST 5530.14 Navy Physical Security

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**MCSF-NLW-2042:** Employ non-lethal tactics

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Describes types of tactics and procedures used in Non-Lethal operations.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard,



FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** As a member of MCSF, given required T/E, non-lethal equipment, under any condition and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate working knowledge of tactics and procedures used in conducting non-lethal operations in accordance with the reference.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 19-15 Civil Disturbances

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**MCSF-PS-2043:** Identify technology gear

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Identifies technology gear used in the physical security field.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** As a member of MCSF guard, given T/E, technology set, and with the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Identify and demonstrate the proper use of items from the technology set in accordance with the references.

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17330 Covered Training Area

---

**PRP-PS-2044:** Control access to an exclusion area

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** An Exclusion Area is an area that contains material sensitive

in nature and vital to national security. Access to these areas must be tightly controlled to avoid compromise of the material.

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given the proper EAL, T/E equipment, in any environment, day or night and with the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Permit access into the exclusion area of those personnel with the proper authorization and deny access to those personnel without proper authorization, during a time limit not to exceed a normal post rotation in accordance with the reference.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 5210.41 Security Policy for Protection Nuclear Weapons

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**PRP-PS-2045:** Control access to a limited area

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** MCSF personnel in PRP commands are responsible for safeguarding material vital to national security. Strict access controls are established by Naval regulations and enforced by PRP Marines. The Naval regulations address access to Limited Area and Exclusion Areas. In this event Marines are evaluated on their ability to control access to a Limited Area.

**BILLETS:** Assistant Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Assistant Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Fire Team Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co, Machine Gun Gunner, FAST Co, Machine Gun Team Leader, FAST Co, Platoon Commander, FAST Co, Platoon Guide, FAST Co, Platoon Sergeant, FAST Co, Radio Operator, FAST Co, Rifleman/Guard, FAST Co, SMAW Assaultman, FAST Co, Squad Leader/Guard NCO, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given the proper references, manuals, lists, orders, SOPs, badges and EALs, and under any condition, day or night.

**STANDARD:** Allow those personnel with proper authorization to enter a Limited Area and deny access to any person without proper authorization to enter a limited area during a period of time not to exceed a normal post rotation period.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 5210.41 Security Policy for Protection Nuclear Weapons

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

MCSF BN T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX A

MCSFBN FUNCTIONAL AREA MATRIX

FUNCTIONAL AREA CODE	DESCRIPTION
AT	<u>Anti-terrorism</u> . The capability to conduct defensive measures used to reduce the vulnerabilities of individuals and property to terrorist acts to include limited response and containment by local military forces. Actions that deter, detect, defend against, and mitigate the effects of terrorism.
CMDC	<u>Command and Control</u> . The exercise of authority and direction by a properly designated commander over assigned and attached forces in the accomplishment of the mission. Command and control functions are performed through an arrangement of personnel, equipment, communications, facilities, and procedures employed by a commander in planning, directing, coordinating, and controlling forces and operations in the accomplishment of the mission.
CONV	<u>Convoy</u> . The ability to move a group of vehicles organized for the purpose of control and orderly movement, with escort protection, through permissive and non-permissive environments.
CQB	<u>Close Quarters Battle</u> . The ability to conduct an offensive operation within close quarters or a confined space for the purpose of retaking key terrain or vital assets. The capability involves precision shooting and dynamic entry.
DM	<u>Designated Marksman</u> . The ability to employ precision long-range direct fire with a scoped weapon against identified specific targets. This capability includes surveillance and counter-surveillance of a designated area to detect threat activities.
NLW	<u>Non-lethal weapons</u> . The capability to employ weapons and techniques to respond to threats across the spectrum of forces.
PS	<u>Physical Security</u> . The ability to employ physical measures designed to safeguard personnel; to prevent unauthorized access to equipment, installations, material, and documents; and to safeguard them against espionage, sabotage, damage, and theft. This capability includes perimeter security, access control, protective barriers, and observation.
WPNS	<u>Weapons</u> . The ability to employ individual and crew-served weapons proficiently and safely, maximizing the effects on intended targets.

## MCSF BN T&R MANUAL

### APPENDIX B

#### GLOSSARY

##### TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

Terms in this glossary are subject to change as applicable orders and directives are revised. Terms established by Marine Corps orders or directives take precedence after definitions found in Joint Pub 1-02, *DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms*.

#### A

**After Action Review.** A professional discussion of training events conducted after all training to promote learning among training participants. The formality and scope increase with the command level and size of the training evolution. For longer exercises, they should be planned for at predetermined times during an exercise. The results of the AAR shall be recorded on an after action report and forwarded to higher headquarters. The commander and higher headquarters use the results of an AAR to reallocate resources, reprioritize their training plan, and plan for future training.

**Assessment.** An informal judgment of the unit's proficiency and resources made by a commander or trainer to gain insight into the unit's overall condition. It serves as the basis for the midrange plan. Commanders make frequent use of these determinations during the course of the combat readiness cycle in order to adjust, prioritize or modify training events and plans.

#### C

**Chaining.** A process that enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate collective events and individual events that support a specific collective event. For example, collective training events at the 4000-level are directly supported by collective events at the 3000-level. Utilizing the building block approach to progressive training, these collective events are further supported by individual training events at the 1000 and 2000-levels. When a higher-level event by its nature requires the completion of lower level events, they are "chained"; Sustainment credit is given for all lower level events chained to a higher event.

**Collective Event.** A clearly defined, discrete, and measurable activity, action, or event (i.e., task) that requires organized team or unit performance and leads to accomplishment of a mission or function. A collective task is derived from unit missions or higher-level collective tasks. Task accomplishment requires performance of procedures composed of supporting collective or individual tasks. A collective task describes the exact performance a group must perform in the field under actual operational conditions. The term "collective" does not necessarily infer that a unit accomplishes the event. A unit, such as a squad or platoon conducting an attack; may accomplish a collective event or, it may be accomplished by an individual to accomplish a unit mission, such as a battalion supply officer completing a reconciliation of the battalion's CMR. Thus, many collective events will have titles that are the same as individual events; however, the

standard and condition will be different because the scope of the collective event is broader.

**Collective Training Standards (CTS).** Criteria that specify mission and functional area unit proficiency standards for combat, combat support, and combat service support units. They include tasks, conditions, standards, evaluator instruction, and key indicators. CTS are found within collective training events in T&R Manuals.

**Combat Readiness Cycle.** The combat readiness cycle depicts the relationships within the building block approach to training. The combat readiness cycle progresses from T&R Manual individual core skills training, to the accomplishment of collective training events, and finally, to a unit's participation in a contingency or actual combat. The combat readiness cycle demonstrates the relationship of core capabilities to unit combat readiness. Individual core skills training and the training of collective events lead to unit proficiency and the ability to accomplish the unit's stated mission.

**Combat Readiness Percentage (CRP).** The CRP is a quantitative numerical value used in calculating collective training readiness based on the E-coded events that support the unit METL. CRP is a concise measure of unit training accomplishments. This numerical value is only a snapshot of training readiness at a specific time. As training is conducted, unit CRP will continuously change.

**Component Events.** Component events are the major tasks involved in accomplishing a collective event. Listing these tasks guide Marines toward the accomplishment of the event and help evaluators determine if the task has been done to standard. These events may be lower-level collective or individual events that must be accomplished.

**Condition.** The condition describes the training situation or environment under which the training event or task will take place. Expands on the information in the title by identifying when, where, and why the event or task will occur and what materials, personnel, equipment, environmental provisions, and safety constraints must be present to perform the event or task in a real-world environment. Commanders can modify the conditions of the event to best prepare their Marines to accomplish the assigned mission (e.g. in a desert environment; in a mountain environment; etc.).

**Core Competency.** Core competency is the comprehensive measure of a unit's ability to accomplish its assigned MET. It serves as the foundation of the T&R Program. Core competencies are those unit core capabilities and individual core skills that support the commander's METL and T/O mission statement. Individual competency is exhibited through demonstration of proficiency in specified core tasks and core plus tasks. Unit proficiency is measured through collective tasks.

**Core Capabilities.** Core capabilities are the essential functions a unit must be capable of performing during extended contingency/combat operations. Core unit capabilities are based upon mission essential tasks derived from operational plans; doctrine and established tactics; techniques and procedures.

**Core Plus Capabilities.** Core plus capabilities are advanced capabilities that are environment, mission, or theater specific. Core plus capabilities

may entail high-risk, high-cost training for missions that are less likely to be assigned in combat.

**Core Plus Skills.** Core plus skills are those advanced skills that are environment, mission, rank, or billet specific. 2000-level training is designed to make Marines proficient in core skills in a specific billet or at a specified rank at the Combat Ready level. 3000-8000-level training produces combat leaders and fully qualified section members at the Combat Qualified level. Marines trained at the Combat Qualified level are those the commanding officer feels are capable of accomplishing unit-level missions and of directing the actions of subordinates. Many core plus tasks are learned via MOJT, while others form the base for curriculum in career level MOS courses taught by the formal school.

**Core Skills.** Core skills are those essential basic skills that "make" a Marine and qualify that Marine for an MOS. They are the 1000-level skills introduced in entry-level training at formal schools and refined in operational units.

## D

**Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS).** A comprehensive readiness reporting system that evaluates readiness on the basis of the actual missions and capabilities assigned to the forces. It is a capabilities-based, adaptive, near real-time reporting system for the entire Department of Defense.

**Deferred Event.** A T&R event that a commanding officer may postpone when in his or her judgment, a lack of logistic support, ammo, ranges, or other training assets requires a temporary exemption. CRP cannot be accrued for deferred "E-coded" events.

**Delinquent Event.** An event becomes delinquent when a Marine or unit exceeds the sustainment interval for that particular event. The individual or unit must update the delinquent event by first performing all prerequisite events. When the unit commander deems that performing all prerequisite is unattainable, then the delinquent event will be re-demonstrated under the supervision of the appropriate evaluation authority.

## E

**E-coded Event.** An "E-coded" event is a collective T&R event that is a noted indicator of capability or, a noted Collective skill that contributes to the unit's ability to perform the supported MET. As such, only "E-coded" events are assigned a CRP value and used to calculate a unit's CRP.

**Entry-level training.** Pipeline training that equips students for service with the Marine Operating Forces.

**Evaluation.** Evaluation is a continuous process that occurs at all echelons, during every phase of training and can be both formal and informal. Evaluations ensure that Marines and units are capable of conducting their combat mission. Evaluation results are used to reallocate resources, reprioritize the training plan, and plan for future training.

**Event (Training).** (1) An event is a significant training occurrence that is identified, expanded and used as a building block and potential milestone for a unit's training. An event may include formal evaluations. (2) An event within the T&R Program can be an individual training evolution, a collective training evolution or both. Through T&R events, the unit commander ensures that individual Marines and the unit progress from a combat capable status to a Fully Combat Qualified (FCQ) status.

**Event Component.** The major procedures (i.e., actions) that must occur to perform a Collective Event to standard.

**Exercise Commander (EC).** The Commanding General, Marine Expeditionary Force or his appointee will fill this role, unless authority is delegated to the respective commander of the Division, Wing, or FSSG. Responsibilities and functions of the EC include: (1) designate unit(s) to be evaluated, (2) may designate an exercise director, (3) prescribe exercise objectives and T&R events to be evaluated, (4) coordinate with commands or agencies external to the Marine Corps and adjacent Marine Corps commands, when required.

**Exercise Director (ED).** Designated by the EC to prepare, conduct, and report all evaluation results. Responsibilities and functions of the ED include: (1) Publish a letter of instruction (LOI) that: delineates the T&R events to be evaluated, establishes timeframe of the exercise, lists responsibilities of various elements participating in the exercise, establishes safety requirements/guidelines, and lists coordinating instructions. (2) Designate the TEC and TECG to operate as the central control agency for the exercise. (3) Assign evaluators, to include the senior evaluator, and ensure that those evaluators are properly trained. (4) Develop the general exercise scenario taking into account any objectives/ events prescribed by the EC. (5) Arrange for all resources to include: training areas, airspace, aggressor forces, and other required support.

## I

**Individual Readiness.** The individual training readiness of each Marine is measured by the number of individual events required and completed for the rank or billet currently held.

**Individual Training.** Training that applies to individual Marines. Examples include rifle qualifications and HMMWV driver licensing.

**Individual Training Standards (ITS).** Specifies training tasks and standards for each MOS or specialty within the Marine Corps. In most cases, once an MOS or community develops a T&R, the ITS order will be cancelled. However, most communities will probably fold a large portion of their ITS into their new T&R manual.

## M

**Marine Corps Combat Readiness and Evaluation System (MCCRES).** An evaluation system designed to provide commanders with a comprehensive set of mission performance standards from which training programs can be developed; and through which the efficiency and effectiveness of training can be evaluated. The Ground T&R Program will eventually replace MCCRES.

**Marine Corps Ground Training and Readiness (T&R) Program.** The T&R Program is the Marine Corps' primary tool for planning and conducting training, for



planning and conducting training evaluation, and for assessing training readiness. The program will provide the commander with standardized programs of instruction for units within the ground combat, combat support, and combat service support communities. It consolidates the ITS, CTS, METL and other individual and unit training management tools. T&R is a program of standards that systematizes commonly accepted skills, is open to innovative change, and above all, tailors the training effort to the unit's mission. Further, T&R serves as a training guide and provides commanders an immediate assessment of unit combat readiness by assigning a CRP to key training events. In short, the T&R Program is a building block approach to training that maximizes flexibility and produces the best-trained Marines possible.

**Mission Essential Task(s) MET(s).** A MET is a collective task in which an organization must be proficient in order to accomplish an appropriate portion of its wartime mission(s). MET listings are the foundation for the T&R manual; all events in the T&R manual support a MET.

**Mission Essential Task List (METL).** Descriptive training document that provides units a clear, war fighting focused description of collective actions necessary to achieve wartime mission proficiency. The service-level METL, that which is used as the foundation of the T&R manual, is developed using Marine Corps doctrine, Operational Plans, T/Os, UJTL, UNTL, and MCTL. For community based T&R Manuals, an occupational field METL is developed to focus the community's collective training standards. Commanders develop their unit METL from the service-level METL, operational plans, contingency plans, and SOPs.

**Mission Performance Standards (MPS).** Criteria that specify mission and functional area unit proficiency standards for combat, combat support and combat service support units. They include tasks, conditions, standards, evaluator instruction, and key indicators. MPS are contained within the MCCRES volumes. The MCCRES volumes are being replaced by T&R Manuals. Collective Events will replace MPS.

## O

**Operational Readiness (DOD, NATO).** OR is the capability of a unit/formation, ship, weapon system, or equipment to perform the missions or functions for which it is organized or designed. May be used in a general sense or to express a level or degree of readiness.

## P

**Performance step.** Performance steps are included in the components of an Individual T&R Event. They are the major procedures (i.e., actions) a unit Marine must accomplish to perform an individual event to standard. They describe the procedure the task performer must take to perform the task under operational conditions and provide sufficient information for a task performer to perform the procedure. (May necessitate identification of supporting steps, procedures, or actions in outline form.) Performance steps follow a logical progression and should be followed sequentially, unless otherwise stated. Normally, performance steps are listed only for 1000-level individual events (those that are taught in the entry-level MOS school). Listing performance steps is optional if the steps are already specified in a published reference.

**Prerequisite Event.** Prerequisites are the academic training and/or T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the event.

## R

**Readiness (DOD).** Readiness is the ability of US military forces to fight and meet the demands of the national military strategy. Readiness is the synthesis of two distinct but interrelated levels: (a) Unit readiness--The ability to provide capabilities required by combatant commanders to execute assigned missions. This is derived from the ability of each unit to deliver the outputs for which it was designed. (b) Joint readiness--The combatant commander's ability to integrate and synchronize ready combat and support forces to execute assigned missions.

## S

**Section Skill Tasks.** Section Skills are those competencies directly related to unit functioning. They are group rather than individual in nature, and require participation by a section (S-1, S-2, S-3, etc).

**Simulation Training.** Simulators provide the additional capability to develop and hone core and core plus skills. Accordingly, the development of simulator training events for appropriate T&R syllabi can help maintain valuable combat resources while reducing training time and cost. Therefore, in cases where simulator fidelity and capabilities are such that simulator training closely matches that of actual training events, T&R Manual developers may include the option of using simulators to accomplish the training. CRP credit will be earned for E-coded simulator events based on assessment of relative training event performance.

**Standard.** A standard is a statement that establishes criteria for how well a task or learning objective must be performed. The standard specifies how well, completely, or accurately a process must be performed or product produced. For higher-level collective events, it describes why the event is being done and the desired end-state of the event. Standards become more specific for lower-level events and outline the accuracy, time limits, sequencing, quality, product, process, restrictions, etc., that indicate the minimum acceptable level of performance required of the event. At a minimum, both collective and individual training standards consist of a task, the condition under which the task is to be performed, and the evaluation criteria that will be used to verify that the task has been performed to a satisfactory level.

**Sustainment Training.** Periodic retraining or demonstration of an event required maintaining the minimum acceptable level of proficiency or capability required to accomplish a training objective. Sustainment training goes beyond the entry-level and is designed to maintain or further develop proficiency in a given set of skills.

**Systems Approach to Training (SAT).** An orderly process for analyzing, designing, developing, implementing, and evaluating a unit's training program to ensure the unit, and the Marines of that unit acquire the knowledge and skills essential for the successful conduct of the unit's wartime missions.

## T

**Training Task.** This describes a direct training activity that pertains to an individual Marine. A task is composed of 3 major components: a description of what is to be done, a condition, and a standard.

**Technical Exercise Controller (TEC).** The TEC is appointed by the ED, and usually comes from his staff or a subordinate command. The TEC is the senior evaluator within the TEGC and should be of equal or higher grade than the commander(s) of the unit(s) being evaluated. The TEC is responsible for ensuring that the evaluation is conducted following the instructions contained in this order and MCO 1553.3A. Specific T&R Manuals are used as the source for evaluation criteria.

**Tactical Exercise Control Group (TECG).** A TECG is formed to provide subject matter experts in the functional areas being evaluated. The benefit of establishing a permanent TECG is to have resident, dedicated evaluation authority experience, and knowledgeable in evaluation technique. The responsibilities and functions of the TECG include: (1) developing a detailed exercise scenario to include the objectives and events prescribed by the EC/ED in the exercise LOI; (2) conducting detailed evaluator training prior to the exercise; (3) coordinating and controlling role players and aggressors; (4) compiling the evaluation data submitted by the evaluators and submitting required results to the ED; (5) preparing and conducting a detailed exercise debrief for the evaluated unit(s).

**Training Plan.** Training document that outlines the general plan for the conduct of individual and collective training in an organization for specified periods of time.

## U

**Unit CRP.** Unit CRP is a percentage of the E-coded collective events that support the unit METL accomplished by the unit. Unit CRP is the average of all MET CRP.

**Unit Evaluation.** All units in the Marine Corps must be evaluated, either formally or informally, to ensure they are capable of conducting their combat mission. Informal evaluations should take place during all training events. The timing of formal evaluations is critical and should, when appropriate, be directly related to the units' operational deployment cycle. Formal evaluations should take place after the unit has been staffed with the majority of its personnel, has had sufficient time to train to individual and collective standards, and early enough in the training cycle so there is sufficient time to correctly identified weaknesses prior to deployment. All combat units, and units task organized for combat require formal evaluations prior to operational deployments.

**Unit Training Management (UTM).** Unit training management is the use of the SAT and Marine Corps training principles in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit on its wartime mission. UTM governs the major peacetime training activity of the Marine Corps and applies to all echelons of the Total Force.

## W

**Waived Event.** An event that is waived by a commanding officer when in his or her judgment, previous experience or related performance satisfies the requirement of a particular event.